H04N
PICTORIAL COMMUNICATION, e.g. TELEVISION

Definition statement

This place covers:

Television systems

- Television systems, whether general or specially adapted for colour television
- Details of television systems of general applicability, or specific to colour television, and also including scanning details of television systems
- Coding, decoding, compressing or decompressing of digital video signals
- Stereoscopic television systems, whether general or specially adapted for colour television, or details therefor
- Selective distribution of pictorial content, in particular interactive television or video on demand [VOD]
- Diagnosis, testing or measuring for television systems or details therefor
- Transmission of pictures or their transient or permanent reproduction either locally or remotely, by methods involving both the following steps:
  - Step (a): the scanning of a picture, i.e. resolving the whole picture-containing area into individual picture-elements and the derivation of picture-representative electric signals related thereto, simultaneously or in sequence;
  - Step (b): the reproduction of the whole picture-containing area by the reproduction of individual picture-elements into which the picture is resolved by means of picture-representative electric signals derived therefrom, simultaneously or in sequence;
- (In group H04N 1/00) Systems for the transmission or the reproduction of arbitrarily composed pictures or patterns in which the local light variations composing a picture are not subject to variation with time, e.g. documents (both written and printed), maps, charts, photographs (other than cinematograph films);
- Circuits specially designed for dealing with pictorial communication signals, e.g. television signals, as distinct from merely signals of a particular frequency range.

Other pictorial communication

- Scanning, transmission or reproduction of documents or the like, in particular facsimile transmission
- Details pertaining to scanning, transmission or reproduction of documents or the like, in particular details of facsimile transmission

Relationships with other classification places

Subclass G09G covers arrangements for control of display devices characterised by the type of display device or its components, whilst H04N covers the acquisition and control of the picture signal which is intended for display.

Photographic or cinematographic apparatus, or processes, that are specific to film-based photography or cinematography (e.g. film-strip handling) are covered in subclass G03B. The optical and mechanical features of cameras and projectors are typically – but not always – covered by subclass G03B, and due regard should be given to the multi-aspect classification rule stated below.

When the following subject matter is classified in this subclass, it is desirable to also classify it in Subclass G03B, when some aspects are considered of interest for search purposes:

- Digital still cameras, or their details
- Projectors or projection-type viewers using an electronic spatial light modulator, or their details
- Video cameras, CCTV cameras, surveillance cameras and camcorders, or details thereof
References

Application-oriented references

Examples of places where the subject matter of this place is covered when specially adapted, used for a particular purpose, or incorporated in a larger system:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Instrumentations for performing medical examinations of the interior of cavities or tubes of the body combined with television appliances</th>
<th>A61B 1/04</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Arrangements of television sets in vehicles; Arrange ment of controls thereof</td>
<td>B60R 11/02</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mounting of cameras operative during drive of a vehicle;</td>
<td>B60R 11/04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arrangements of cameras in aircraft</td>
<td>B64D 47/08</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Controlling or regulating single-crystal growth by pulling from a melt, using television detectors</td>
<td>C30B 15/26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inspecting textile materials by television means</td>
<td>D06H 3/08</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scanning a visible indication of a measured value and reproducing this indication at a remote place, e.g. on the screen of a cathode-ray tube</td>
<td>G01D 5/39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Burglar, theft, or intruder alarms using television cameras</td>
<td>G08B 13/196</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Structural combination of reactor core or moderator structure with television camera</td>
<td>G21C 17/08</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Video games, i.e. games using an electronically generated display having two or more dimensions</th>
<th>A63F 13/00</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Systems for the reproduction according to the above-mentioned step (b) of pictures comprising alphanumeric or like character forms and involving the generation according to the above-mentioned step (a) of picture-representative electric signals from a pre-arranged assembly of such characters, or records thereof, forming an integral part of the systems</td>
<td>B41B, G06K</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Printing, duplication or marking processes, or materials therefor</td>
<td>B41C, B41J, B41M, G03C, G03F, G03G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Systems for the reproduction according to step (b) of Note (1) of pictures comprising alphanumeric or like character forms but involving the production of the EQUIVALENT of a signal which would be derived according to the above-mentioned step (a), e.g. by cams, punched card or tape, coded control signal, or other means</td>
<td>G01D, G06T, H04L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Systems for the direct photographic copying of an original picture in which an electric signal representative of the picture is derived according to the said step (a) and employed to modify the operation of the system, e.g. to control exposure,</td>
<td>G03</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Systems in which legible alphanumeric or like character forms are analysed according to step (a) of Note (1) to derive an electric signal from which the character is recognised by comparison with stored information</td>
<td>G06K</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Image data processing or generation, in general</td>
<td>G06T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Circuits or other parts of systems which form the subject of other subclasses</td>
<td>H03C, H03F, H03J, H04H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Broadcasting</td>
<td>H04H</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Glossary of terms

In this place, the following terms or expressions are used with the meaning indicated:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>television systems</td>
<td>Systems for the transmission and reproduction of arbitrarily composed pictures in which the local light variations composing a picture MAY change with time, e.g. natural “live” scenes, recordings of such scenes such as cinematograph films</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCD</td>
<td>Charge-coupled device, that is, a device made up of semiconductors arranged in such a way that the electric charge output of one semiconductor charges an adjacent one</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MPEG</td>
<td>Motion Picture Experts Group; a family of standards used for coding audio-visual information in a digital compressed format</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NTSC</td>
<td>National Television System Committee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PAL</td>
<td>Phase alternating line</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Picture signal generator</td>
<td>Circuits or arrangements receiving as input an image of a scene and delivering as output an electric signal that contains all the information required to reproduce the image of the scene</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Picture reproducer</td>
<td>Circuits or arrangements receiving as input an electric signal characteristic of an image of a scene and producing as output a visual display of that image</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SECAM</td>
<td>Séquentiel couleur à mémoire (Sequential Colour with Memory)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

H04N 1/00

Scanning, transmission or reproduction of documents or the like, e.g. facsimile transmission; Details thereof

Definition statement

This place covers:

- systems for the transmission or the reproduction of arbitrarily composed pictures or patterns in which the local light variations composing a picture are not subject to variation with time, e.g. documents (both written and printed), maps, charts, photographs (other than cinematograph films);
- transmission of time-invariant pictures, e.g. documents (both written and printed), maps, charts, photographs (other than cinematograph films), or their transient or permanent storage or reproduction either locally or remotely by methods involving both scanning and reproduction;
- systems involving the generation, transmission, storage or reproduction of time-invariant pictures; image manipulation for such reproduction on particular output devices;
- devices applied to the transmission, storage or reproduction of time-invariant pictures, e.g. facsimile apparatus, digital copiers, (digital) scanners, multifunctional peripheral devices;
- circuits specially designed for dealing with pictorial communication signals, e.g. facsimile signals or colour image signals, as distinct from merely signals of a particular frequency range;
- storage or transmission aspects of still video cameras.

Relationships with other classification places

- **H04N 1/00** is an application place for a large number of IT technologies, which are covered per se by the corresponding functional places
- Image servers, hosts and clients use internally specific computing techniques. Corresponding techniques used in general computing are found in G06F or G06Q. This concerns data storage, software architectures, error detection or correction in general computing, monitoring, image retrieval, browsing, Internet browsing, computer security, billing or advertising
• Image servers, hosts and clients use specific telecommunication techniques for the image transmission process. Corresponding techniques used in generic telecommunication networks are found in subclasses H04B, H04H, H04L, H04M, H04W. This concerns monitoring or testing of transmitters/receivers, broadcast or multicast, maintenance, administration, testing, data processing in data switching networks, home networks, real-time data network services, data network security, applications for data network, wireless networks per se

• Image scanners use specific scanning techniques. Corresponding techniques are found in G02B. This concerns optical scanning systems

• Image reproducers use specific reproduction techniques. Corresponding techniques are found in B41J, G03G, G06K. This concerns printing, electrography, producing a permanent visual presentation of output data

• General image processing techniques are found in G06T

References

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Classification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Scanning details of electrically scanned solid-state devices</td>
<td>H04N 3/14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scanning of motion picture films</td>
<td>H04N 3/36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Capture aspects of still video cameras</td>
<td>H04N 5/225</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Television signal recording</td>
<td>H04N 5/76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Circuits for processing colour television signals</td>
<td>H04N 9/64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Printing mechanisms</td>
<td>B41J</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Supporting or handling copy material in printers</td>
<td>B41J 11/00, B41J 13/00, B41J 15/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Handling thin or filamentary material</td>
<td>B65H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colorimetry</td>
<td>G01J</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Electrography; Magnetography</td>
<td>G03G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Handling of copy material in photocopiers</td>
<td>G03G 15/65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Constructional details of equipment or arrangements specially adapted for portable computer application</td>
<td>G06F 1/1626</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Power management in computer systems</td>
<td>G06F 1/3203</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Input and output arrangements for computers</td>
<td>G06F 3/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interaction techniques for graphical user interfaces</td>
<td>G06F 3/048</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Storage management</td>
<td>G06F 3/0604</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Digital output to printers</td>
<td>G06F 3/12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adressing or allocating within memory systems or architectures</td>
<td>G06F 12/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Image retrieval</td>
<td>G06F 16/50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Retrieval from Web</td>
<td>G06F 16/95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Computer security</td>
<td>G06F 21/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sensing record carriers</td>
<td>G06K 7/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Character or pattern recognition</td>
<td>G06K 9/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Methods or arrangements for acquiring or recognising human faces, facial parts, facial sketches, facial expressions</td>
<td>G06K 9/00221</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Methods or arrangements for recognising human body or animal bodies or body parts</td>
<td>G06K 9/00362</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Methods or arrangements for recognising scenes</td>
<td>G06K 9/00624</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Producing a permanent visual presentation of output data</td>
<td>G06K 15/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Payment schemes, Commerce</td>
<td>G06Q 20/00, G06Q 30/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>General-purpose image data processing</td>
<td>G06T 1/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Image watermarking</td>
<td>G06T 1/0021</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Geometric image transformation in the plane of the image</td>
<td>G06T 3/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Image enhancement or restoration</td>
<td>G06T 5/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Image analysis</td>
<td>G06T 7/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Image coding</td>
<td>G06T 9/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Editing figures and text; Combining figures or text</td>
<td>G06T 11/60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Access-control involving the use of a pass</td>
<td>G07C 9/20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Access-control by means of a password</td>
<td>G07C 9/33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coding, decoding or code conversion, for error detection or error correction</td>
<td>H03M 13/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monitoring or testing of transmitters/receivers</td>
<td>H04B 17/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Broadcast communication</td>
<td>H04H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secret communication; Jamming of communication</td>
<td>H04K 1/00, H04K 3/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arrangements for detecting or preventing errors in the information received</td>
<td>H04L 1/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arrangements for secret or secure communication; Encryption</td>
<td>H04L 9/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Charging arrangements in data networks</td>
<td>H04L 12/14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Data processing in data switching networks</td>
<td>H04L 12/56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Real-time data network services</td>
<td>H04L 29/06176</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Data network security</td>
<td>H04L 29/06551</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Applications for data network services</td>
<td>H04L 29/08081</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Simultaneous speech and telegraphic or other data transmission over the same conductors</td>
<td>H04M 11/06</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Telephonic metering arrangements</td>
<td>H04M 15/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Connection management in wireless communications networks</td>
<td>H04W 76/00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Special rules of classification**

In this main group Indexing Codes are used:

The numbering of the codes is based on the numbering of the subgroups;

- codes, e.g. H04N 1/0455, which have a numbering the first part of which corresponds to a subgroup which is at the tip end of a subgroup branch, e.g. H04N 1/0402, are used to classify detailed information and may be applied to that subgroup, e.g. H04N 1/0455 may be used in combination with H04N 1/0402;
- codes, e.g. H04N 2201/0402, which have a numbering the first part of which corresponds to a subgroup which is at the head or node end of a subgroup branch, e.g. H04N 1/04, are used to classify orthogonal information and may be applied to any subgroups in the corresponding...
subgroup branch, e.g. H04N 2201/0434 may be used in combination with H04N 1/0402 and/or H04N 1/1013.

**Glossary of terms**

*In this place, the following terms or expressions are used with the meaning indicated:*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Additional information</td>
<td>any information other than the still picture itself, but nevertheless associated with the still picture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Documents or the like</td>
<td>documents (both written and printed), maps, charts, photographs (other than cinematograph films)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Main-scan</td>
<td>the first completed scan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mode</td>
<td>way or manner of operating</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scanning</td>
<td>the displacement of active reading or reproducing elements relative to the original or reproducing medium, or vice versa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Still picture apparatus</td>
<td>any apparatus generating, storing, transmitting or reproducing non-transient images</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Single-mode communication</td>
<td>a communication in which the mode is not changed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Synonyms and Keywords**

*In patent documents, the following abbreviations are often used:*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IP</td>
<td>Internet Protocol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OS</td>
<td>Operating System</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PC</td>
<td>Personal Computer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GPS</td>
<td>Global Positioning System</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MFP</td>
<td>Multifunctional peripheral</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MFD</td>
<td>Multifunctional device</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RFID</td>
<td>Radio-frequency identification</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*In patent documents, the following words/expressions are often used as synonyms:*

- Complex device and Multifunctional peripheral
- Complex machine and Multifunctional peripheral
- Hybrid device and Multifunctional peripheral
- Hybrid machine and Multifunctional peripheral
- Digital camera and Still video camera
- Metadata and Additional information
- Fast scan and Main scan
- Slow scan, Subscan and Sub scan
H04N 1/00002

{Diagnosis, testing or measuring; Detecting, analysing or monitoring not otherwise provided for (error detection, error correction or monitoring in digital computers or digital computer components G06F 11/00)}

References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>CPC</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Determining the necessity for preventing unauthorised reproduction</td>
<td>H04N 1/0084</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Detecting scanning velocity or position</td>
<td>H04N 1/047</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fault detection in circuits or arrangements for control supervision between transmitter and receiver or between image input and image output device</td>
<td>H04N 1/32609</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Discrimination between different image types</td>
<td>H04N 1/40062</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Discrimination between the two tones in the picture signal of a two-tone original</td>
<td>H04N 1/403</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Control or modification of tonal gradation or extreme levels, e.g. dependent on the contents of the original or references outside the picture</td>
<td>H04N 1/407</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

H04N 1/00095

{Systems or arrangements for the transmission of the picture signal}

References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>CPC</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Transmitting or receiving computer data via an image communication device</td>
<td>H04N 1/00206</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transmitting or receiving image data via a computer or computer network</td>
<td>H04N 1/00209</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Circuits or arrangements for control or supervision between transmitter and receiver</td>
<td>H04N 1/32</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

H04N 1/00132

{in a digital photofinishing system, i.e. a system where digital photographic images undergo typical photofinishing processing, e.g. printing ordering}

References

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>CPC</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Data processing systems for commerce</td>
<td>G06Q 30/00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
H04N 1/00209
{Transmitting or receiving image data, e.g. facsimile data, via a computer, e.g. using e-mail, a computer network, the internet, I-fax}

References
Informative references
Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Message switching systems, e.g. e-mail systems | H04L 51/00 |

H04N 1/00236
{using an image reading or reproducing device, e.g. a facsimile reader or printer, as a local input to or local output from a computer (image input to or image output from a computer via a network H04N 1/00209)}

References
Informative references
Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Portable computers comprising integrated printing or scanning devices | G06F 1/1696 |

H04N 1/00249
{with a photographic apparatus, e.g. a photographic printer or a projector (photographic apparatus per se G03B, G03D)}

References
Limiting references
This place does not cover:

| Photographic apparatus per se | G03B, G03D |

Special rules of classification
Typically with apparatus of the kind classified in G03B, G03D or G03G.

H04N 1/00254
{with an electrophotographic copying machine, i.e. a photocopier}

Special rules of classification
Typically with apparatus of the kind classified in G03G.
H04N 1/00278
{with a printing apparatus, e.g. a laser beam printer}

Special rules of classification
Typically with apparatus of the kind classified in B41J or G06K 15/00.

H04N 1/00281
{with a telecommunication apparatus, e.g. a switched network of teleprinters for the distribution of text-based information, a selective call terminal (details of transmission H04N 1/00095; establishing a communication with one of a facsimile machine or another apparatus sharing a single line H04N 1/32704; interfacing cordless telephone terminals with an accessory to increase the functionality of user interface H04M 1/72527)}

Special rules of classification
Typically with apparatus of the kind classified in other H04 subclasses or other H04N main groups.

H04N 1/00283
{with a television apparatus}

Special rules of classification
Typically with apparatus of the kind classified in other H04N main groups.

H04N 1/00286
{with studio circuitry, devices or equipment, e.g. television cameras (television studio circuitry, devices or equipment per se H04N 5/222)}

References
Limiting references
This place does not cover:

| Television studio circuitry, devices or equipment per se | H04N 5/222 |

Special rules of classification
Typically with apparatus of the kind classified in H04N 5/222 and subgroups.

H04N 1/00291
{with receiver circuitry (television receiver circuitry per se H04N 5/44)}

References
Limiting references
This place does not cover:

| Television receiver circuitry per se | H04N 5/44 |
Special rules of classification
Typically with apparatus of the kind classified in H04N 5/44 and subgroups.

H04N 1/00326
{with a data reading, recognizing or recording apparatus, e.g. with a bar-code apparatus (arrangements for the associated working of recording or reproducing apparatus with related apparatus G11B 31/00)}

Special rules of classification
Typically with apparatus of the kind classified in G06K or G11B.

H04N 1/00567
{Handling of original or reproduction media, e.g. cutting, separating, stacking}

References
Informative references
Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Supporting or handling copy material in printers | B41J 11/00, B41J 13/00, B41J 15/00 |
| Handling thin or filamentary material | B65H |
| Handling of copy material in photocopiers | G03G 15/65 |

H04N 1/00838
{Preventing unauthorised reproduction}

References
Limiting references
This place does not cover:

| Marking an unauthorised reproduction with identification | H04N 1/32101 |
| Restricting access | H04N 1/4406 |

Informative references
Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Preventing copies being made in photocopiers | G03G 21/04 |
H04N 1/024
Details of scanning heads {; Means for illuminating the original}

References
Informative references
Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Details of scanning arrangements | H04N 1/04 |

H04N 1/028
for picture information pick-up

References
Informative references
Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Television cameras | H04N 5/225 |

H04N 1/0281
{with means for collecting light from a line or an area of the original and for guiding it to only one or a relatively low number of picture element detectors}

References
Informative references
Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Light-guides per se | G02B 6/00 |

H04N 1/029
Heads optically focused on only one picture element at a time {(H04N 1/0281 takes precedence)}

References
Limiting references
This place does not cover:

| Means for collecting light from a line or an area of the original and for guiding it to only one or a relatively low number of picture element detectors | H04N 1/0281 |
H04N 1/03

with photodetectors arranged in a substantially linear array

References

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Scanning arrangements using multi-element arrays | H04N 1/19 |

H04N 1/04

Scanning arrangements {i.e. arrangements for the displacement of active reading or reproducing elements relative to the original or reproducing medium, or vice versa} (H04N 1/387 takes precedence)

References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

| Composing, repositioning or otherwise modifying originals | H04N 1/387 |

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Details of scanning heads | H04N 1/024 |
| Optical scanning systems | G02B 26/10 |
| Projection optics in photocopiers | G03G 15/0409 |
| Character printers involving the fast moving of a light beam in two directions | G06K 15/1228 |

Special rules of classification

Where possible both the main and sub scanning arrangements should be classified, using a class for the invention and an Indexing Code for subsidiary information. Manual scanning and scanning using two-dimensional arrays are exceptions to this rule.

Glossary of terms

In this place, the following terms or expressions are used with the meaning indicated:

| Main scan direction | The direction of the first completed scan line |
**H04N 1/047**

Detection, control or error compensation of scanning velocity or position ([H04N 1/0402 and } H04N 1/17 take precedence)

**References**

**Limiting references**

*This place does not cover:*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>CPC</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Scanning different formats; Scanning with different densities of dots per</td>
<td>H04N 1/0402</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unit length, e.g. different numbers of dots per inch (dpi); Conversion of</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scanning standards</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The scanning speed being dependent on content of picture</td>
<td>H04N 1/17</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Informative references**

*Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>CPC</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Detection, control or error compensation of scanning velocity or opposition</td>
<td>G06K 15/1219</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in photographic character printers involving the fast moving of an optical</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beam in the main scan direction</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Special rules of classification**

Where possible, when classifying in this subgroup, details of the main and subscan should also be classified using other subgroups of H04N 1/04.

**H04N 1/0473**

{in subscanning direction, e.g. picture start or line-to-line synchronisation}

**Special rules of classification**

Where possible, when classifying in this subgroup, details of the main scan should also be classified using other subgroups of H04N 1/04.

**H04N 1/053**

in main scanning direction, e.g. synchronisation of line start or picture elements in a line

**Special rules of classification**

Where possible, when classifying in this subgroup, details of the subscan should also be classified using other subgroups of H04N 1/04.
H04N 1/06
using cylindrical picture-bearing surfaces {, i.e. scanning a main-scanning line substantially perpendicular to the axis and lying in a curved cylindrical surface}

References
Informative references
Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Feeding a sheet in the subscanning direction by rotation about its axis only | H04N 1/12 |

H04N 1/10
using flat picture-bearing surfaces {(H04N 1/113, H04N 1/195 take precedence)}

References
Informative references
Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Arrangements for the main-scanning | H04N 1/12 |

H04N 1/113
using oscillating or rotating mirrors

References
Limiting references
This place does not cover:

| Optical details of the scanning system | G02B 26/10 |

Informative references
Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Character printers involving the fast moving of a light beam in two directions | G06K 15/1228 |

H04N 1/1135
{for the main-scan only}

References
Limiting references
This place does not cover:

| Optical details of the scanning system | G02B 26/10, G02B 26/12 |
Informative references
Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>CPC Class</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Optical printers using dot sequential main scanning by means of a light deflector</td>
<td>B41J 2/471</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Character printers involving the fast moving of an optical beam in the main scan direction</td>
<td>G06K 15/1204</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

H04N 1/12

using the sheet-feed movement (or the medium-advance or the drum-rotation movement) as the slow scanning component, (e.g. arrangements for the main-scanning) (sheet-feed movement by translatory movement of a flat picture-bearing surface H04N 1/1008; main-scanning using oscillating or rotating mirrors H04N 1/113; } using multi-element arrays H04N 1/19)

References

Limiting references
This place does not cover:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>CPC Class</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Scanning arrangements using multi-element arrays</td>
<td>H04N 1/19</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Informative references
Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>CPC Class</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Character printers involving the fast moving of an optical beam in the main scan direction</td>
<td>G06K 15/1204</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

H04N 1/19

using multi-element arrays

References

Informative references
Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>CPC Class</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Optical printers using arrays of radiation sources</td>
<td>B41J 2/447</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Photographic character printers simultaneously exposing more than one point</td>
<td>G06K 15/1238</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
H04N 1/1911

{Simultaneously or substantially simultaneously scanning picture elements on more than one main scanning line, e.g. scanning in swaths}

References

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Photographic character printers simultaneously exposing more than one point on more than one main scanning line | G06K 15/1257 |

H04N 1/192

Simultaneously {or substantially simultaneously} scanning picture elements on one main scanning line

References

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Details of the sub-scanning | H04N 1/10, H04N 1/12 |
| Photographic character printers simultaneously exposing more than one point on one main scanning line | G06K 15/1242 |

H04N 1/21

Intermediate information storage (H04N 1/387, H04N 1/41 take precedence {; for control between transmitter and receiver or between image input and image output device H04N 1/32358; indexing, editing G11B 27/00})

Definition statement

This place covers:
Where the storage results in a record that is not merely transient.

References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

| Storage resulting in a transient record, for control or supervision between image input and image output device | H04N 1/32358 |
| Composing, repositioning or otherwise modifying originals | H04N 1/387 |
| Bandwidth or redundancy reduction | H04N 1/41 |

Glossary of terms

In this place, the following terms or expressions are used with the meaning indicated:

| Intermediate | having no limiting meaning |
H04N 1/2112

{using still video cameras}

References

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Still video cameras</th>
<th>H04N 2101/00</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

H04N 1/23

Reproducing arrangements

Definition statement

This place covers:

Arrangements providing the output copy of a document in a system performing the scanning, transmission and reproduction of documents or the like, e.g. printing arrangements integrated within a facsimile device

References

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Details of scanning heads</th>
<th>H04N 1/024</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Scanning arrangements</td>
<td>H04N 1/04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perforating or marking objects by electrical discharge</td>
<td>B26F 1/28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selective printing mechanisms per se</td>
<td>B41J</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

H04N 1/27

involving production of a magnetic intermediate picture

References

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Magnetography</th>
<th>G03G 19/00</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
H04N 1/29
involving production of an electrostatic intermediate picture

References

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Electrography          | G03G |

H04N 1/32

Circuits or arrangements for control or supervision between transmitter and receiver {or between image input and image output device (H04N 1/38, H04N 1/387 take precedence)}

References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

| Circuits or arrangements for blanking or otherwise eliminating unwanted parts of pictures | H04N 1/38 |
| Composing, repositioning or otherwise modifying originals | H04N 1/387 |

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Digital output from electrical digital data processing unit to print unit | G06F 3/12 |
| Communication control for transmission of digital information in general | H04L 29/02 |

H04N 1/32005

{Automation of particular receiver jobs, e.g. rejecting unwanted calls (requesting a communication from a transmitter H04N 1/32771; with picture signal storage for forwarding messages H04N 1/32358)}

References

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Automatic arrangements for answering calls in telephonic equipment | H04M 1/64 |
H04N 1/32037
{Automation of particular transmitter jobs, e.g. multi-address calling, auto-dialing}

References
Informative references
Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Telephonic equipment for signalling identity of wanted subscriber | H04M 1/26 |

H04N 1/32101
{Display, printing, storage or transmission of additional information, e.g. ID code, date and time or title}

References
Informative references
Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Television systems for the transmission of television signals using pulse code modulation, using bandwidth reduction involving the insertion of extra data | H04N 19/467 |
| Television bitstream transport arrangements involving transporting of additional information | H04N 21/23614 |
| Broadcast communication systems specially adapted for using meta-information | H04H 60/73 |

Synonyms and Keywords
In patent documents, the following words/expressions are often used as synonyms:
- "metadata" for "additional information"

H04N 1/32144
{embedded in the image data, i.e. enclosed or integrated in the image, e.g. watermark, super-imposed logo or stamp}

References
Informative references
Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Image watermarking | G06T 1/0021 |
| Audio watermarking | G10L 19/018 |
H04N 1/32154
{Transform domain methods (H04N 1/32309 takes precedence)}

References
Limiting references
This place does not cover:

| In colour image data | H04N 1/32309 |

Informative references
Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Transmission of digital television signals using bandwidth reduction and involving the insertion of extra data | H04N 19/467 |

H04N 1/32358
{using picture signal storage, e.g. at transmitter (H04N 1/17 takes precedence)}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Storage results in a transient record, e.g. buffering

References
Limiting references
This place does not cover:

| Scanning speed being dependent on content of picture | H04N 1/17 |
| Storage resulting in a record which is other than merely transient | H04N 1/21 |

H04N 1/324
{intermediate the transmitter and receiver terminals, e.g. at an exchange}

References
Informative references
Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Stored and forward switching systems in transmission of digital information | H04L 12/54 |
H04N 1/32614
{related to a single-mode communication, e.g. at the transmitter or at the receiver}

References

Informative references
Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Coding, decoding or code conversion, for error detection or error correction | H03M 13/00 |
| Arrangements for detecting or preventing errors in received digital information | H04L 1/00 |

H04N 1/32704
{Establishing a communication with one of a facsimile and another telecommunication apparatus sharing a single line}

References

Informative references
Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Simultaneous speech and other data transmission over the same conductors in telephonic communication systems | H04M 11/06 |

H04N 1/333
Mode signalling or mode changing; Handshaking therefor

References

Informative references
Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Negotiation of communication capabilities for communication control in transmission of digital information | H04L 29/06537 |

H04N 1/3333
{during transmission, input or output of the picture signal; within a single document or page}

References

Informative references
Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Systems modifying digital information transmission characteristics according to link quality | H04L 1/0001 |
H04N 1/34
for coin-freed systems {; Pay systems}

References
Informative references
Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Coin-freed or like apparatus per se</th>
<th>G07F</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Telephonic metering</td>
<td>H04M 15/00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

H04N 1/36
for synchronising or phasing transmitter and receiver

Definition statement
This place covers:
Obsolete subject matter, analog facsimile communication.

References
Informative references
Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Synchronisation of pulses                   | H03K 4/90 |

H04N 1/38
Circuits or arrangements for blanking or otherwise eliminating unwanted parts of pictures (H04N 1/387 takes precedence)

Definition statement
This place covers:
Removing parts of the image e.g. smudges, extracting part of an image, screen out unwanted image regions, removing finger shadow, removing perforated holes when copying a perforated paper.

References
Limiting references
This place does not cover:

| Composing, repositioning or otherwise modifying originals | H04N 1/387 |

Special rules of classification
Drop out for parts of the image while changing color is in H04N 1/62, form drop out data in H04N 1/4177.
**H04N 1/387**

**Composing, repositioning or otherwise {geometrically} modifying originals**

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

Composing e.g. combining 2 images. Reading of books and correction for geometric distortions due to curved (book page) original. Geometric modifications caused through warping of image.

**References**

**Informative references**

*Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Photoelectric composing of characters</th>
<th>B41B 19/00</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Editing, producing a composite image by copying with focus on copy machine</td>
<td>G03G 15/36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Text processing</td>
<td>G06F 40/10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pagination</td>
<td>G06F 40/114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Image data processing or generation, in general</td>
<td>G06T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Geometric modification and warping in general</td>
<td>G06T 3/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Teaching/communicating with deaf, blind, mute people</td>
<td>G09B 21/00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**H04N 1/3871**

{the composed originals being of different kinds, e.g. low- and high-resolution originals}

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

Eg. combining chart, text, logo (low resolution/bit depth) and photo (high resolution/bit depth) or foreground and background, with focus on image processing. Also high dynamic range (HDR) imagery when combined with H04N 1/407.

**References**

**Informative references**

*Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Inserting foreground into background with focus on camera</th>
<th>H04N 5/272</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Combining objects while rendering PDL</td>
<td>G06T 11/60</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**H04N 1/3872**

{Repositioning or masking}

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

Image cropping, cutting out, masking with arbitrary shape.
References

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Selection / ordering of images (from movies) | G11B 27/034 |

H04N 1/3873

{defined only by a limited number of coordinate points or parameters, e.g. corners, centre; for trimming}

Definition statement

This place covers:

User defines the corner coordinates to extract image for repositioning. Cutting out, cropping, number of points is important. Low resolution pre-scan and high-resolution main scan of part of platen.

H04N 1/3875

{combined with enlarging or reducing (enlarging or reducing per se H04N 1/393)}

Definition statement

This place covers:

Part of the image is enlarged/reduced to fit new position. Reducing for medium, zoom, belief map.

References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

| Corrections or small zoom factors | H04N 1/3873 |
| Enlarging or reducing | H04N 1/393 |

H04N 1/3876

{Recombination of partial images to recreate the original image}

Definition statement

This place covers:

Combining two images which have been scanned by a scanner which does not cover the entire image. Panoramic image creation, combination, stitching. Process is done digitally and not mechanically.

References

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Mechanical corrections | H04N 2201/0402 |
| Mosaic images or mosaicing | G06T |
H04N 1/3876 (continued)

Determination of transform parameters for the alignment of images, i.e.  
image registration  

G06T 7/30

H04N 1/3877
{Image rotation}

Definition statement

This place covers:
Rotating the image by any amount, e.g. 90-degree. Also when printing double sided or 4 images on 1 page.

References

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

When focus is on image processing.  

G06T 3/60

H04N 1/3878
{Skew detection or correction}

Definition statement

This place covers:
Limited to detecting and correcting skew, i.e. errors during scanning: normally less than 45-degree.

Relationships with other classification places

See also in G06K 9/3275.

References

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

Mechanical skew detection  

H04N 1/00681

H04N 1/393

Enlarging or reducing

Definition statement

This place covers:
Mainly the mechanical enlargement process, whole image, DIN A4 to DIN A3 (larger than DIN A4).

Special rules of classification

This subgroup takes precedence over H04N 1/04.
H04N 1/3935
{with modification of image resolution, i.e. determining the values of picture
elements at new relative positions}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Digitally enlarging or reducing images with a change of resolution including e.g. interpolation (digital).

Relationships with other classification places
Beware of H04N 1/40068 which has resolution conversion where physical size is irrelevant.

References
Informative references
Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Interpolation in general | G06T 3/40 |

H04N 1/40
Picture signal circuits (H04N 1/387 takes precedence)

Definition statement
This place covers:
General documents regarding quality aspects, quantization (errors), scanning either B/W or color, video printer, frame grabber, memory arrangement or management, smear reduction for CCD.

References
Limiting references
This place does not cover:

| Composing, repositioning or otherwise modifying originals | H04N 1/387 |

Informative references
Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Moving images, e.g. television | H04N 5/14 |

H04N 1/40012
{Conversion of colour to monochrome}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Converting coloured documents into B&W so they can be printed on monotone printers, e.g. changing green into stripes, red into dots.... Converting from RGB via thresholding to grayscale.
H04N 1/40025

{Circuits exciting or modulating particular heads for reproducing continuous tone value scales (H04N 1/401, H04N 1/407 take precedence)}

Definition statement

This place covers:
Writing: control of print heads, stylus heads, electrostatic heads. Continuous driving signals.

Relationships with other classification places

Overlap with G06K 15/12.

References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>H04N 1/401</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Compensating positionally unequal response of the pick-up or reproducing head</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Control or modification of tonal gradation or of extreme levels</td>
<td>H04N 1/407</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>G06K 15/102</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Multipass inkjet</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

H04N 1/40031

{for a plurality of reproducing elements simultaneously}

Definition statement

This place covers:
Writing: multiple print elements, essentially LED or thermal printheads, but also using several lasers in parallel.

H04N 1/40037

{the reproducing element being a laser}

Definition statement

This place covers:
Mainly continuous tone laser printers.
**H04N 1/40056**

{Circuits for driving or energising particular reading heads or original illumination means (H04N 1/401, H04N 1/407 take precedence)}

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

Control of light during reading of a document; circuits for driving diodes, analogue switches for light control. Also exposure time of sensor etc.

**References**

**Limiting references**

*This place does not cover:*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Class</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Compensating positionally unequal response of the pick-up or reproducing head</td>
<td>H04N 1/401</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Control or modification of tonal gradation or of extreme levels</td>
<td>H04N 1/407</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Informative references**

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Class</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mechanical details</td>
<td>H04N 1/028</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lamps per se</td>
<td>H05B 39/041, H05B 41/38</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**H04N 1/40062**

{Discrimination between different image types, e.g. two-tone, continuous tone}

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

Image segmentation, finds regions in bitmap image e.g. text, table, photo, line image; also "mixed raster content" or "MRC".

**References**

**Informative references**

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Class</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Character recognition, OCR</td>
<td>G06K 9/00442</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Segmentation; Edge detection in general</td>
<td>G06T 7/10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
H04N 1/40068

{Modification of image resolution, i.e. determining the values of picture elements at new relative positions (H04N 1/3935 takes precedence)}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Change resolution while physical size is irrelevant, e.g. original image is 600dpi and printer is only capable of printing 300dpi, so conversion is necessary.

References
Limiting references
This place does not cover:

With modification of image resolution, i.e. determining the values of picture elements at new relative positions

H04N 1/3935

Informative references
Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

Increasing or decreasing spatial resolution

G06K 15/1872

H04N 1/40075

{Descreening, i.e. converting a halftone signal into a corresponding continuous-tone signal; Rescreening, i.e. combined descreening and halftoning}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Descreening and/or rescreening, self-explanatory.

H04N 1/40081

{Soft dot halftoning, i.e. producing halftone dots with gradual edges}

References
Informative references
Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

Resolution enhancement by intelligently pacing sub-pixels when focus is on write head control.

H04N 1/40025

General edge enhancement

H04N 1/409
H04N 1/40087

{Multi-toning, i.e. converting a continuous-tone signal for reproduction with more than two discrete brightnesses or optical densities, e.g. dots of grey and black inks on white paper}

Definition statement

This place covers:

Provides more than just level 0 and level 255 for image, e.g. has levels 0, 127 and 255, i.e. multi-level halftoning. Typical documents: EP817464 (Seiko) shows two types of ink C1 and C2 (color multi-toning in H04N 1/52), EP889639 (Xerox) shows levels of white, light gray, dark gray and black.

References

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Variation of dot size</th>
<th>H04N 1/4057</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>General bit depth reduction</td>
<td>H04N 19/90</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

H04N 1/40093

{Modification of content of picture, e.g. retouching (geometric modifications H04N 1/387)}

Definition statement

This place covers:

Very few applications. Local modifications, e.g. making lighter and posterization of natural images.

H04N 1/401

Compensating positionally unequal response of the pick-up or reproducing head (H04N 1/403 takes precedence)

Definition statement

This place covers:

Limited to image readers, mostly line sensors. Shading correction, illumination profile, head calibration, positionally varying noise etc. Also defects in the image sensors. Compensation of ambient illumination.

References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

| Discrimination between the two tones in the picture signal of a two-tone original | H04N 1/403 |
**Informative references**

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ambient illumination also in</th>
<th>H04N 1/00835</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Control of light source</td>
<td>H04N 1/40056</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Correction of isolated defects in image</td>
<td>H04N 1/409</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Defect maps for area sensors</td>
<td>H04N 5/2176</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**H04N 1/4015**

{of the reproducing head}

**Definition statement**

This place covers:
Printers, corrects misaligned or defective heads; head calibration.

**References**

**Informative references**

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Malfunctioning inkjet nozzles</th>
<th>B41J 2/165</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**H04N 1/403**

Discrimination between the two tones in the picture signal of a two-tone original

**References**

**Informative references**

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Shaping pulses by limiting or thresholding, in general</th>
<th>H03K 5/08</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**H04N 1/405**

Halftoning, i.e. converting the picture signal of a continuous-tone original into a corresponding signal showing only two levels

**Definition statement**

This place covers:
Halftoning in general, either B&W only or each color layer separately. Examples are EP126782, EP673150.
**H04N 1/4051**

{producing a dispersed dots halftone pattern, the dots having substantially the same size (different sizes H04N 1/4057)}

**Definition statement**

_This place covers:_

Dispersed dots, i.e. dots that are not concentrated in clusters which spread out from a central point. Examples are US5317418 - e.g. Gaussian filter, blue noise; US5426122 - FM rasters.

**H04N 1/4052**

{by error diffusion, i.e. transferring the binarising error to neighbouring dot decisions}

**Definition statement**

_This place covers:_

Error diffusion for halftoning, note that error diffusion is also used for other purposes in other parts of H04N 1/00. Examples are EP507354, EP808055.

**H04N 1/4053**

{with threshold modulated relative to input image data or vice versa}

**Definition statement**

_This place covers:_

Illustrative examples of subject matter classified in this group are WO8906080, EP715451.

**H04N 1/4055**

{producing a clustered dots or a size modulated halftone pattern}

**Definition statement**

_This place covers:_

Halftone dots grow from a central point and spread in all directions. Also dispersed clusters. Illustrative examples are US3688033, EP651560.

**H04N 1/4056**

{the pattern varying in one dimension only, e.g. dash length, pulse width modulation [PWM]}

**Definition statement**

_This place covers:_

Growth of halftone dot in one direction only, includes Pulse Width Modulation. Illustrative examples are EP212990, US4951152.
H04N 1/4057
{the pattern being a mixture of differently sized sub-patterns, e.g. spots having only a few different diameters (multi-toning H04N 1/40087)}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Different dot sizes, each dot has the same density. Illustrative examples are EP647059 (fig.5), US4680645 (fig.1).

Special rules of classification
For dots of different densities (inks) classify in H04N 1/40087.

H04N 1/4058
{with details for producing a halftone screen at an oblique angle (H04N 1/4056 takes precedence)}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Illustrative examples are GB2026283, WO9307709.

References
Limiting references
This place does not cover:

Pattern varying in one dimension only

H04N 1/4056

H04N 1/407
Control or modification of tonal gradation or of extreme levels, e.g. background level

Definition statement
This place covers:
Selection of particular gamma correction table, correction depending on media scanned or printed on, film type correction, correction of tone scale for dot gain.

Relationships with other classification places
Similar to H04N 1/6027 for colour.

H04N 1/4072
{dependent on the contents of the original}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Analysis of image content to determine final correction to be applied, e.g. automatic background deletion.
References

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

- Conversion to binary
  - H04N 1/403

H04N 1/4074

{using histograms}

Definition statement

This place covers:

Histogram analysis to determine tone correction parameters.

References

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

- In context of pure image processing
  - G06T 5/40

H04N 1/4076

{dependent on references outside the picture}

Definition statement

This place covers:

Pre-scanning to read reference strips (B&W), which is used to set max and min levels. Very limited test patterns containing only black (offset correction) and white (gain correction), e.g. printed next to an image or as separate image. Standard pattern on monitor (no light for black reference and light on for white reference).

References

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

- Monitor calibration per se
  - H04N 5/202, H04N 9/69

H04N 1/4078

{using gradational references, e.g. grey-scale test pattern analysis}

Definition statement

This place covers:

Test pattern analysis for gray scale corrections.
H04N 1/4078 (continued)

References
Informative references
Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

For colour

H04N 1/6033,
H04N 1/6055

H04N 1/409

Edge or detail enhancement; Noise or error suppression

Definition statement
This place covers:
Noise or error correction. Elimination of "streaky effects".

References
Informative references
Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

For colour

H04N 1/401

Image processing per se

G06T 5/003, G06K 9/40

H04N 1/4092

{Edge or detail enhancement}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Fairly self-explanatory. Has also first edge detection and then correction. Edge emphasis, sharpness correction, unsharp masking, smoothing.

References
Informative references
Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

For color

H04N 1/58

For cameras

H04N 5/208

Image processing per se

G06T 5/003

H04N 1/4095

{Correction of errors due to scanning a two-sided document, i.e. show-through correction}

Synonyms and Keywords
In patent documents, the following words/expressions are often used as synonyms:

• "show-through" and "see-through"
H04N 1/4097
{Removing errors due external factors, e.g. dust, scratches}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Removal of streaks, dust, blemishes, tears, scratches, hairs. Removing scratches from photographs using infrared image.

H04N 1/41
Bandwidth or redundancy reduction (by scanning H04N 1/17 {; methods or arrangements for coding, decoding, compressing or decompressing digital video signals H04N 19/00})

Definition statement
This place covers:
General coding groups for still images, B&W, gray scale or each color component separately. This head group has using different coding techniques within the same document, combination of different techniques, or choosing from different available coding methods (e.g. characters with technique 1, pictures with technique 2).

References
Limiting references
This place does not cover:

| Bandwidth or redundancy reduction by scanning | H04N 1/17 |
| Television systems for the transmission of television signals using bandwidth reduction | H04N 19/00 |
| For mixed image compression | H04N 19/12 |

Informative references
Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Coding of color images | H04N 1/64 |
| Bandwidth or redundancy reduction for data acquisition | G06F 17/40 |
| Coding for image data processing in general | G06T 9/00 |
| Data Compression in general | H03M 7/30 |

H04N 1/4105
{for halftone screened pictures}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Image to be coded must be halftoned image only.
H04N 1/411
for the transmission {or storage} or reproduction of two-tone pictures, e.g. black and white pictures

Definition statement
This place covers:
B&W images, i.e. binary coding.

References
Informative references
Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Continuous tone compression</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

H04N 1/4115
{involving the recognition of specific patterns, e.g. by symbol matching}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Eg. huffman coding.

H04N 1/413
Systems or arrangements allowing the picture to be reproduced without loss or modification of picture-information

Definition statement
This place covers:
Lossless coding, has a variety of coding methods, e.g. comparing different codings of a line and choosing shortest code; universal coding.

H04N 1/415
in which the picture-elements are subdivided or grouped into fixed one-dimensional or two-dimensional blocks

Definition statement
This place covers:
Block coding, also mix of Huffman and run-length coding.

H04N 1/417
using predictive or differential encoding

Definition statement
This place covers:
Predictive coding, arithmetic coding.
**H04N 1/4172**

{Progressive encoding, i.e. by decomposition into high and low resolution components}

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

Different resolutions of the image, wavelet coding for binary images.

**H04N 1/4175**

{involving the encoding of tone transitions with respect to tone transitions in a reference line}

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

Differential coding, i.e. coding the change data between two lines.

**H04N 1/4177**

{encoding document change data, e.g. form drop out data}

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

Templates, encodes the data change only; encode difference of image when template is known, e.g. scanned images of filled out form sheets.

**References**

**Informative references**

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Color form drop-out | G06K 9/2018 |

**H04N 1/419**

in which encoding of the length of a succession of picture-elements of the same value along a scanning line is the only encoding step (H04N 1/4135 - H04N 1/417 take precedence)

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

B&W runlength encoding.

**References**

**Limiting references**

This place does not cover:

| Baseband signal showing more than two values or a continuously varying baseband signal is transmitted or recorded | H04N 1/4135 |
Systems or arrangements allowing the picture to be reproduced without loss or modification of picture-information using predictive or differential encoding

**H04N 1/42**

Systems for two-way working {, e.g. conference systems (H04N 1/32 takes precedence)}

**References**

**Limiting references**

This place does not cover:

- Circuits or arrangements for control or supervision between transmitter and receiver

**Informative references**

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

- Television systems for two-way working
- Selective content distribution, e.g. interactive television

**H04N 1/44**

Secrecy systems

**References**

**Limiting references**

This place does not cover:

- Preventing unauthorised reproduction

**Informative references**

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

- Analogue secrecy television systems
- Security arrangements for protecting computers or computer systems against unauthorised activity
- Secret communication in general
- Arrangements for secret or secure communication in transmission of digital information
H04N 1/4406
{Restricting access, e.g. according to user identity (mechanisms actuated by cards, PIN or the like in apparatus for dispensing G07F 7/08)}

References
Informative references
Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Class</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Restricting access to computer systems</td>
<td>G06F 21/30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Access-control involving the use of a pass</td>
<td>G07C 9/20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Verifying the identity or authority of a user of a system for the transmission of digital information</td>
<td>H04L 9/32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Protecting transmitted digital information from access by third parties</td>
<td>H04L 29/06632</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Access control in transmission of digital information</td>
<td>H04L 29/06823</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

H04N 1/448
{Rendering the image unintelligible, e.g. scrambling}

References
Informative references
Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Class</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Systems rendering a television signal unintelligible and subsequently intelligible</td>
<td>H04N 7/167</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ciphering or deciphering apparatus for cryptographic purposes</td>
<td>G09C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secret communication by adding a second signal to make the desired signal unintelligible</td>
<td>H04K 1/02</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

H04N 1/4486
{using digital data encryption}

References
Informative references
Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Class</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Arrangements for secret or secure communication using public key encryption algorithm</td>
<td>H04L 9/30</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
H04N 1/46

Colour picture communication systems

Definition statement

This place covers:
Colour edit systems, printers with different recording modes for color and monochrome, decision as to print/scan color or B&W, general color applications for fax. Very general group.

References

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Colorimetry     | G01J 3/46 |

H04N 1/465

Conversion of monochrome to colour

Definition statement

This place covers:
Very straightforward, conversion into color documents, e.g. pattern chart to color (opposite to H04N 1/40012). Generating false color representations.

H04N 1/48

Picture signal generators (for halftone screening H04N 1/52)

Definition statement

This place covers:
Color image readers, hardware of apparatuses.

References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

| Circuits or arrangements for halftone screening | H04N 1/52 |

H04N 1/482

using the same detector device sequentially for different colour components

Definition statement

This place covers:
Filter wheels to separate components.
H04N 1/484
{with sequential colour illumination of the original}

Definition statement
This place covers:
The use of different lights to read the image, e.g. first R, then G, finally B, e.g. successive RGB LED lighting.

H04N 1/486
{with separate detectors, each detector being used for one specific colour component}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Using separate R, G and B sensor elements, typically line sensors. Has also documents on correcting chromatic aberrations of 3-line CCD sensor, also RGB sensor with additional monochrome sensor.

References
Informative references
Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>For area sensors (Bayer matrix)</th>
<th>H04N 9/04</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Demosaicing</td>
<td>G06T 3/4015, H04N 9/045</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

H04N 1/488
{using beam-splitters}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Splitting light using prisms, half (dichroic) mirrors, diffraction grating - most applications deal with line sensors.

H04N 1/50
Picture reproducers (for halftone screening H04N 1/52)

Definition statement
This place covers:
Color printers, hardware of apparatuses.

References
Limiting references
This place does not cover:

| Circuits or arrangements for halftone screening | H04N 1/52 |
H04N 1/502

{Reproducing the colour component signals dot-sequentially or simultaneously in a single or in adjacent picture-element positions}

Definition statement

This place covers:
Dot by dot printing, point-wise scanning, essentially either inkjet or laser beam printer.

References

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| More details on inkjets | B41J 2/21 |

H04N 1/504

{Reproducing the colour component signals line-sequentially}

Definition statement

This place covers:
Line-by-line printing.

References

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Alignment of dots | B41J 2/2135 |

H04N 1/506

{Reproducing the colour component signals picture-sequentially, e.g. with reproducing heads spaced apart from one another in the subscanning direction}

Definition statement

This place covers:
Picture-by-picture printing, i.e. one complete color separation after the other. Focus on image signal circuits, e.g. start-of-scan determination, sync marks on print medium, misregistration correction correcting misalignment of individual print heads with respect to each other. Facet or face-to-face errors. This is the typical way color laser printers work, when one latent image is generated after the other and one after the other developed and transferred.

References

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Trapping is also used against misregistration, but is an image modification | H04N 1/58 |
H04N 1/506 (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Temperature</th>
<th>G02B 26/121</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Purely mechanical corrections</td>
<td>G09G15/01</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

H04N 1/508
{using the same reproducing head for two or more colour components}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Using one drum for more than one color, thermal transfer printers.

H04N 1/52
Circuits or arrangements for halftone screening

Definition statement
This place covers:
Colour halftoning, colour multi-toning e.g. with use of more than one cyan (C1 and C2), screens, error diffusion.

Special rules of classification
H04N 1/40087 or some subgroup of H04N 1/405 may be applied additionally to H04N 1/52.

H04N 1/54
Conversion of colour picture signals to a plurality of signals some of which represent particular mixed colours, e.g. for textile printing

Definition statement
This place covers:
Printing with additional colours, e.g. using orange and brown pigments additionally or white or gold, CMYKRGB printers.

H04N 1/56
Processing of colour picture signals (H04N 1/52 takes precedence)

Definition statement
This place covers:
General color image processing, color to 2-color conversion (e.g. RGB to black/red). Film type, document type, slide type, text+image, detection of mouse marker.

References
Limiting references
This place does not cover:

| Circuits or arrangements for halftone screening | H04N 1/52 |
**H04N 1/58**

Edge or detail enhancement; Noise or error suppression, e.g. colour misregistration correction ([H04N 1/62](#) takes precedence)

**Definition statement**

This place covers:

Self-explanatory regarding noise and edge. A substantial part of this subgroup deals with trapping (spreading and choking image objects), either on bitmap or on page description language (PDL) level.

**References**

**Limiting references**

This place does not cover:

| Retouching, i.e. modification of isolated colours only or in isolated picture areas only | [H04N 1/62](#) |

**Informative references**

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| For integration of trapping in PDL workflow | G06K 15/1826 |

**H04N 1/60**

Colour correction or control {([H04N 1/54](#) takes precedence)}

**Definition statement**

This place covers:

All kinds of color correction. Estimating spectrum from XYZ input.

**References**

**Limiting references**

This place does not cover:

| Conversion of colour picture signals to a plurality of signals some of which represent particular mixed colours | [H04N 1/54](#) |

**H04N 1/6011**

{with simulation on a subsidiary picture reproducer ([H04N 1/622](#) takes precedence; matching two or more picture reproducers [H04N 1/6052](#))}

**Definition statement**

This place covers:

Color corrections involving representation of the image on monitor, e.g. for interactive correction or for use as soft proofer.
References

Limiting references
This place does not cover:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Limiting reference</th>
<th>CPC code(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Matching printer and monitor for softproofing per se</td>
<td>H04N 1/6052,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>H04N 1/6055</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>With simulation on a subsidiary picture reproducer</td>
<td>H04N 1/622</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

H04N 1/6013

{by simulating several colour corrected versions of the same image simultaneously on the same picture reproducer}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Fairly self-explanatory, typically the user selects one of the several simulated, corrected images.

H04N 1/6016

{Conversion to subtractive colour signals}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Usually transformations from RGB to CMY, but also used generally for transformations to output device values, as far as the focus is on the transformation. Here (matrix) equations are used.

H04N 1/6019

{using look-up tables (H04N 1/6025 takes precedence)}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Look-up tables for color conversion, typically to CMY. Also interpolation methods to calculate the in-between values not stored in the tables, e.g. tetrahedral or cubic interpolations.

References

Limiting references
This place does not cover:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Limiting reference</th>
<th>CPC code(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Generating a fourth subtractive colour signal using look-up tables</td>
<td>H04N 1/6025</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**H04N 1/6022**

{Generating a fourth subtractive colour signal, e.g. under colour removal, black masking}

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

Essentially the transformations to CMYK which involve use of equations. Gray component replacement (GCR), undercolor removal (UCR).

**H04N 1/6025**

{using look-up tables}

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

Four-colour look-up tables, also their interpolation.

**H04N 1/6027**

{Correction or control of colour gradation or colour contrast (H04N 1/6058 takes precedence)}

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

General control and correction of tone reproduction curves. Gray balance, white balance as result thereof. Aspects of saturation correction.

**References**

**Limiting references**

*This place does not cover:*

| Reduction of colour to a range of reproducible colours | H04N 1/6058 |

**Informative references**

*Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:*

| When focus is on white balance per se. | H04N 1/6077 |
| White balance in cameras | H04N 9/73 |

**H04N 1/603**

{controlled by characteristics of the picture signal generator or the picture reproducer}

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

Device profiles, e.g. ICC profiles, profile management for several devices, profile editing.
H04N 1/6033
{using test pattern analysis (H04N 1/6055 takes precedence)}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Printer or scanner calibration using color test patterns.

References
Limiting references
This place does not cover:

| Matching two or more picture signal generators or two or more picture reproducers using test pattern analysis | H04N 1/6055 |

Informative references
Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| For B&W | H04N 1/4078 |
| Camera calibration | H04N 17/02 |
| Color charts as such | G01G3/52 |
| In electrophotography | G03G 15/5041 |

H04N 1/6052
{Matching two or more picture signal generators or two or more picture reproducers}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Specifically matching two (or more) devices to each other, e.g. for proofing, i.e. printer to printer or printer to monitor.

H04N 1/6055
{using test pattern analysis}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Limited to the two device scenario.
H04N 1/6058
{Reduction of colour to a range of reproducible colours, e.g. to ink-reproducible colour gamut}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Gamut mapping and gamut conversion. Mainly within a device-independent space in order to map color reproducability of one device onto that of another device.

References
Informative references
Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| In relation to general image processing and computer graphics | G06T 11/001 |

H04N 1/6072
{adapting to different types of images, e.g. characters, graphs, black and white image portions}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Corrections to an image which depends on the type of image object, i.e. different corrections within one page, e.g. text and picture differently corrected.

References
Informative references
Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Discrimination of image (object) types per se - (B&W), | H04N 1/40062 |
| Discrimination of image (object) types per se - (colour). | H04N 1/56 |

H04N 1/6075
{Corrections to the hue}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Only hue changes, not luminance or chroma or saturation.

References
Limiting references
This place does not cover:

| Saturation correction | H04N 1/6027 |
H04N 1/6077
{Colour balance, e.g. colour cast correction}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Correction of e.g. color fog or blue shift in image.

Special rules of classification
H04N 1/6027 has precedence.

H04N 1/608
{within the L, C1, C2 colour signals}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Eg. histogram technique in L*a*b* color space.

H04N 1/6083
{controlled by factors external to the apparatus}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Environmental factors.

H04N 1/6088
{by viewing conditions, i.e. conditions at picture output}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Eg. correction for sunlight on monitor, artificial lighting, flare.

H04N 1/6094
{depending on characteristics of the input medium, e.g. film type, newspaper}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Different film types have different properties, thus need to be corrected. For newspaper, correction due to the yellowing is necessary.
H04N 1/62
Retouching, i.e. modification of isolated colours only or in isolated picture areas only

Definition statement
This place covers:
Correction limited to particular colors, e.g. the red of a red apple is selected and enhanced. Changing color information in a region.

References
Informative references
Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

For skin color

H04N 1/628

H04N 1/622
{with simulation on a subsidiary picture reproducer}

Definition statement
This place covers:
With display of image on monitor for user selection and editing.

H04N 1/64
Systems for the transmission or the storage of the colour picture signal; Details therefor, e.g. coding or decoding means therefor {(H04N 19/00 takes precedence)}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Colour coding closely related to apparatus.

References
Informative references
Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

Compression of B&W

H04N 1/41

Compression per se

H04N 19/00
H04N 1/642
{Adapting to different types of images, e.g. characters, graphs, black and white image portions}

References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Classification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>For different coding for different image types, but limited to B&amp;W</td>
<td>H04N 1/41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Similar but for colour correction and not coding</td>
<td>H04N 1/6072</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

H04N 1/644
{using a reduced set of representative colours, e.g. each representing a particular range in a colour space}

Definition statement

This place covers:

Palletized colors, including methods of obtaining the palletization and their coding. Rounding, change from true color to 8bit using a pallete.

H04N 1/646
{Transmitting or storing colour television type signals, e.g. PAL, Lab; Their conversion into additive or subtractive colour signals or vice versa therefor (H04N 1/642, H04N 1/644 take precedence)}

Definition statement

This place covers:

Limited to e.g. YUV, Lab, etc.

References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Classification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Adapting to different types of images, e.g. characters, graphs, black and white image portions</td>
<td>H04N 1/642</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Using a reduced set of representative colours, e.g. each representing a particular range in a colour space</td>
<td>H04N 1/644</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

H04N 1/648
{Transmitting or storing the primary (additive or subtractive) colour signals; Compression thereof (H04N 1/642 - H04N 1/646 take precedence)}

Definition statement

This place covers:

Limited to CMY or RGB, raw sensor data.
References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Classifications</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Adapting to different types of images, e.g. characters, graphs, black and</td>
<td>H04N 1/642</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>white image portions</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transmitting or storing colour television type signals</td>
<td>H04N 1/646</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Classifications</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Demosaicing</td>
<td>G06T 3/4015,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>H04N 9/045</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

H04N 3/00

Scanning details of television systems; Combination thereof with generation of supply voltages

Definition statement

This place covers:

- Scanning arrangements using moving aperture, refractor, reflector or lens
- Scanning arrangements using switched light sources, solid-state devices or cathod-ray tube by deflecting electron beams
- Scanning arrangements for motion picture films

H04N 3/02

by optical-mechanical means only (H04N 3/36 takes precedence)

References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Classifications</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Scanning of motion picture films</td>
<td>H04N 3/36</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Application-oriented references

Examples of places where the subject matter of this place is covered when specially adapted, used for a particular purpose, or incorporated in a larger system:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Classifications</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Picture signal generators using optical-mechanical scanning means only, for</td>
<td>H04N 9/10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>colour television systems</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Classifications</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Scanning systems using movable or deformable optical elements for controlling</td>
<td>G02B 26/10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the intensity, colour, phase, polarisation or direction of light</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**H04N 3/10**

by means not exclusively optical-mechanical (**H04N 3/36** takes precedence)

**References**

**Limiting references**

This place does not cover:

| Scanning of motion picture films | H04N 3/36 |

**Informative references**

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Devices or arrangements for the control of the direction of light arriving from an independent light source | G02F 1/00 |

**H04N 3/14**

by means of electrically scanned solid-state devices (for picture generation **H04N 5/335**)

**Definition statement**

This place covers:

Scanning details of electrically scanned solid-state picture reproducers.

**References**

**Limiting references**

This place does not cover:

| Transforming light or analogous information into electric information using solid-state image sensors | H04N 5/335 |

**Application-oriented references**

Examples of places where the subject matter of this place is covered when specially adapted, used for a particular purpose, or incorporated in a larger system:

| Picture reproducers using solid-state colour display devices | H04N 9/30 |

**H04N 3/16**

by deflecting electron beam in cathode-ray tube {, e.g. scanning corrections}

**Definition statement**

This place covers:

Deflection circuits for cathode-ray tubes, when specially adapted for television
References

Application-oriented references
Examples of places where the subject matter of this place is covered when specially adapted, used for a particular purpose, or incorporated in a larger system:

| Picture reproducers, specially adapted for colour television systems, using cathode-ray tubes | H04N 9/16 |

Informative references
Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cathode ray oscillographs</th>
<th>G01R 13/20</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Deflection circuits, of interest only in connection with cathode-ray tube indicators</td>
<td>G09G 1/04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Control arrangements or circuits using single beam cathode-ray tubes, the beam directly tracing characters, the information to be displayed controlling the deflection as a function of time in two spatial coordinates</td>
<td>G09G 1/08</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Electric discharge tubes of discharge lamps</td>
<td>H01J</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Linearisation of ramp of a sawtooth shape pulse</td>
<td>H03K 4/90</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

H04N 3/185
Maintaining dc voltage constant

References

Informative references
Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Regulation of dc voltage in general | G05F |

H04N 3/223
Controlling dimensions (by maintaining the cathode-ray tube high voltage constant H04N 3/185)

References

Limiting references
This place does not cover:

| Circuits for controlling dimensions of picture on screen by maintaining the cathode-ray tube high voltage constant | H04N 3/185 |

Informative references
Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Control arrangements or circuits using single beam cathode-ray tubes, the beam tracing a pattern independent of the information to be displayed, this latter determining the parts of the pattern rendered respectively visible and invisible | G09G 1/14 |
H04N 3/26
Modifications of scanning arrangements to improve focusing

References
Application-oriented references
Examples of places where the subject matter of this place is covered when specially adapted, used for a particular purpose, or incorporated in a larger system:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Arrangements for convergence or focusing in cathode-ray tubes specially adapted for colour television systems</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>H04N 9/28</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Informative references
Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Focussing circuits in general</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>H01J</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

H04N 3/27
Circuits special to multi-standard receivers

References
Informative references
Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Circuitry of multi-standard receivers in general</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>H04N 5/46</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

H04N 3/36
Scanning of motion picture films, e.g. for telecine

References
Application-oriented references
Examples of places where the subject matter of this place is covered when specially adapted, used for a particular purpose, or incorporated in a larger system:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Scanning of colour motion picture films, e.g. for telecine</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>H04N 9/11</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Informative references
Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Picture signal generating by scanning motion picture films or slide opaques, e.g. for telecine</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>H04N 5/253</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**H04N 5/00**

Details of television systems (scanning details or combination thereof with generation of supply voltages **H04N 3/00**)

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

Hardware-related or software-related aspects of television signal processing at the transmitter side or the receiver side

**Relationships with other classification places**

- **H04N 5/00** distinguishes itself from synchronising techniques in transmission of a digital video signal with one or more other digital signals, which are found in **H04N 7/00**
- **H04N 5/00** distinguishes itself from picture signal processing and corresponding techniques, which are found in subclasses **G06T, G09G**. This concerns image processing not specific to a television signal (**G06T**) or video signal processing specific to visual displays (**G09G**), e.g. LCD or plasma panels
- **H04N 5/00** features transmitter techniques specially adapted to analog transmission of television signals. The corresponding function place for generic transmission are found in subclasses **H04N 21/00, H04B, H04H, H04L, H04W**. This concerns servers, broadcast or multicast, home networks, wireless networks per se.
- **H04N 5/00** features receiver techniques specially adapted to the reception of analog television signals. The corresponding place for digital television receivers is **H04N 21/00**.

**References**

**Limiting references**

*This place does not cover:*

| Scanning details of television systems; Combination thereof with generation of supply voltages | **H04N 3/00** |

**Application-oriented references**

*Examples of places where the subject matter of this place is covered when specially adapted, used for a particular purpose, or incorporated in a larger system:*

| Details of colour television systems | **H04N 9/00** |
| Wall TV displays | **H04N 9/12** |
| Details of stereoscopic television systems | **H04N 13/00** |
| Servers specifically adapted for the selective distribution of content | **H04N 21/20** |
| Client devices specifically adapted for the reception of, or interaction with, content in selective content distribution | **H04N 21/40** |

**Informative references**

*Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:*

| Selective content distribution | **H04N 21/00** |
| Constructional details related to the housing of computer displays | **G06F 1/1601** |
| Constructional details or arrangements for portable computers | **G06F 1/1613** |
| Power management in computer systems | **G06F 1/3203** |
Image enhancement or restoration           G06T 5/00
Image analysis                             G06T 7/00
Control arrangements or circuits, of interest only in connection with visual indicators other than cathode-ray tubes G09G 3/00
Control arrangements or circuits for visual indicators common to cathode-ray tube indicators and other visual indicators G09G 5/00
Diversity receivers                        H04B 7/08
Broadcast synchronizing                    H04H 20/18
Broadcast receivers                        H04H 20/38
Synchronizing in TDMA                      H04J 3/06
Receiver synchronizing                     H04L 7/0012, H04L 7/0083
Home automation networks                  H04L 12/2803

Special rules of classification

H04N 5/00 features a number of symbols corresponding to a same number of Indexing Codes (e.g., H04N 5/4448 as symbol and H04N 5/4448 as Indexing Code symbol).

Allocation of symbols and/or Indexing Code symbols:
• A document containing invention information relating to details of television elements will be given a H04N 5/00 group.
• A document containing additional information relating to details of television elements will be given a H04N 5/00 group.
• A document merely mentioning further details of television elements will not be given a group, but it may receive an Indexing Code if the disclosure is considered relevant, e.g. when conversion of interface to progressive scanning (H04N 7/012) involves motion estimation, H04N 5/145 is added.

Glossary of terms

In this place, the following terms or expressions are used with the meaning indicated:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Edging</th>
<th>detection of edges</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Movement estimation</td>
<td>motion vector generation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KTC</td>
<td>Thermal noise on capacitor</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Synonyms and Keywords

In patent documents, the following abbreviations are often used:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GPS</th>
<th>global positioning system</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PC</td>
<td>personal computer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STB</td>
<td>set top box</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
H04N 5/04

Synchronising (for television systems using pulse code modulation H04N 7/56)

References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

| Synchronising systems used in the transmission of pulse code modulated video signals with other pulse code modulated signal | H04N 7/56 |

Application-oriented references

Examples of places where the subject matter of this place is covered when specially adapted, used for a particular purpose, or incorporated in a larger system:

| Colour synchronization | H04N 9/44 |
| Synchronisation processes at server side for selective content distribution | H04N 21/242 |

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Synchronisation between a display unit and other units, e.g. other display units, video-disc players | G09G 5/12 |
| Synchronisation of pulses having essentially a finite slope or stepped portions | H03K 4/90 |
| Synchronisation of generators of electronic oscillations or pulses | H03L 7/00 |
| Arrangements for synchronising receiver with transmitter in the transmission of digital information | H04L 7/00 |

H04N 5/16

Circuitry for reinsertion of dc and slowly varying components of signal; Circuitry for preservation of black or white level

References

Application-oriented references

Examples of places where the subject matter of this place is covered when specially adapted, used for a particular purpose, or incorporated in a larger system:

| Circuits for reinsertion of dc and slowly varying components of colour signals | H04N 9/72 |
H04N 5/20

Circuitry for controlling amplitude response

References

Application-oriented references

Examples of places where the subject matter of this place is covered when specially adapted, used for a particular purpose, or incorporated in a larger system:

| Circuits for controlling the amplitude of colour signals | H04N 9/68 |

H04N 5/21

Circuitry for suppressing or minimising disturbance, e.g. moiré or halo

References

Application-oriented references

Examples of places where the subject matter of this place is covered when specially adapted, used for a particular purpose, or incorporated in a larger system:

| Suppression of noise in television signal recording | H04N 5/911 |

H04N 5/217

in picture signal generation {in cameras comprising an electronic image sensor, e.g. in digital cameras, TV cameras, video cameras, camcorders, webcams, or to be embedded in other devices, e.g. in mobile phones, computers or vehicles}

References

Application-oriented references

Examples of places where the subject matter of this place is covered when specially adapted, used for a particular purpose, or incorporated in a larger system:

| Noise reduction or noise suppression involving solid-state image sensors | H04N 5/357 |

H04N 5/222

Studio circuitry; Studio devices; Studio equipment {; Cameras comprising an electronic image sensor, e.g. digital cameras, video cameras, TV cameras, video cameras, camcorders, webcams, camera modules for embedding in other devices, e.g. in mobile phones, computers or vehicles}

Definition statement

This place covers:

Circuitry, devices and other equipment specially adapted to be used in television studio e.g. for mixing images or generation of special effects. This group covers further process and apparatus related to the concept of electronic image capturing using an electronic image sensor and the related control and processing of the generated electronic image signals
Image pickup devices using electronic image sensors (EIS) like e.g. digital cameras, video cameras, TV cameras, CCTV camera, surveillance camera, camcorders, digital cameras embedded in mobile phones, aspects peculiar to the presence of EIS in electronic still cameras, digital still cameras etc.

Electronic image capture by methods or arrangements involving at least the following step: the scanning of a picture, i.e. resolving the whole picture-containing area or scene into individual picture-elements and the derivation of picture-representative electric signals related thereto, simultaneously or in sequence, e.g. by reading an electronic solid-state image sensor (SSIS) pickup device (e.g. CCD or CMOS image sensor) as electronic image sensor converting optical image in formation into said electrical signals;

in colloquial speech said step is frequently formulated as e.g. capturing a video sequence, digital photographing, etc

Concerning cameras:
• video cameras, TV cameras (e.g. in studios), CCTV cameras, surveillance cameras, camcorders; constructional and mechanical details related to such cameras even when not peculiar to the presence of the EIS e.g. housings
• arrangements/methods for image capture using an electronic image sensor (EIS), i.e.((i) sensor read-out; (ii) processing or use of electrical image signals from the EIS for the generation of camera control signals,
• for controlling the EIS or its read-out for e.g. exposure, scene selection for auto focusing, or electronic image enhancement or processing of image signals captured by the EIS, e.g. white balance, electronic motion blur correction, noise suppressing,
• for controlling other camera functions, e.g. exposure, shaking by influencing optical parts of the camera, focusing,
• in-camera image processing e.g. correction of lens distortion, defect pixel correction, noise suppression, removal of motion blur, improving the dynamic range of the final image;
• electronic viewfinders, control of image pickup devices based on information displayed by the electronic viewfinder;
• electrical and mechanical aspects of camera modules using electronic image sensors and related constructional details as in webcams or mobile phones;
• remote control of cameras peculiar to the EIS, e.g. affecting their operation, or being based on a generated image signal;
• adaptations peculiar to the presence or use of an EIS, the transmission, recording or other use of electrical image data and related circuitry, e.g. mounting of EIS, integrated cleaning system for the EIS, dust mapping, cooling of the EIS, controlling the operation of the EIS by external input signals;
• cameras wherein the inventive contribution lies in the interaction of features covered above with those covered by G03B e.g. switch-over between electronic motion-blur correction of electronic viewfinder during focusing and optical motion-blur correction of the lens during exposure, electronic-motion blur correction of the electronic image signal based on output signals of additional sensor, or interaction between mechanical shutter and electronic control of the charge accumulation period of the EIS;
• applications concerning studios and image capturing devices that can not be classified in lower groups such as camera operation in general, like in studio or for TV events (sports,...), processing for simulating film look, virtual studio, virtual depth image, video assist system, other studio equipment e.g. prompter.

Relationships with other classification places
Groups in G03B are to be considered when the following aspects are concerned:
• apparatus/methods for taking photographs using light sensitive film for image capture, apparatus/methods for projecting or viewing images using film stock, photographic film or slides by optical means, e.g. mounting of optical elements, flashes, and their related controls, e.g. exposure, focus, (opto-)mechanical motion blur (anti-shake), cooling, beam shaping;
• aspects of apparatus/methods for taking photographs using a electronic image sensor (EIS) for image capture, insofar they correspond to those of said apparatus/methods for taking photographs using light sensitive film, i.e. insofar not peculiar to the presence or use of the EIS, e.g. mounting of optical elements or flashes, and their related controls insofar as they are not peculiar to the presence or use of the EIS, e.g. exposure, focus, (opto-)mechanical motion blur correction (anti-shake);
• optical viewfinders;
• remote control of cameras insofar not peculiar to the EIS, e.g. not affecting their operation, or being based on a generated image signal;
• optical aspects of camera modules using electronic image sensors and related constructional details (e.g. lens actuators)

The following scheme is intended to illustrate the relationship between H04N and G03B:

References

Application-oriented references

Examples of places where the subject matter of this place is covered when specially adapted, used for a particular purpose, or incorporated in a larger system:

Videophones | H04N 7/14
---|---
Closed circuit television system | H04N 7/18
Camera adapted for vehicles | B60R 1/00
Pattern recognition (e.g. details of face detection algorithms) | G06K 9/00
Surveillance systems with alarm | G08B 13/194 - G08B 13/196
Mobile phones | H04M 1/00
**Informative references**

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>CPC Classifications</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Intermediate information storage using still video cameras</td>
<td>H04N 1/2112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use of solid state image sensors</td>
<td>H04N 5/335</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Video recording</td>
<td>H04N 5/76, H04N 9/76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aspect related to colour cameras</td>
<td>H04N 9/04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Testing of cameras</td>
<td>H04N 17/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Radiation diagnosis, diagnostic aspect of medical imaging devices</td>
<td>A61B, A61C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pyrometry, measuring temperature</td>
<td>G01J 5/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Measuring X-rays, gamma radiation</td>
<td>G01T 1/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optical systems</td>
<td>G02B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pattern recognition</td>
<td>G06K</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Image processing in general, i.e. not being exclusively adapted to be used in an image pickup device containing an EIS or in studio devices or equipment</td>
<td>G06T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Editing of recorded image information</td>
<td>G11B 27/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Solid state imaging devices, e.g. CMOS image sensors</td>
<td>H01L 27/146</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optical elements or arrangements associated with solid state imager structures</td>
<td>H01L 27/14625</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCD image sensors</td>
<td>H01L 27/148</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Broadcasting</td>
<td>H04H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mounting structure in mobile phones</td>
<td>H04M 1/0264</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Glossary of terms**

In this place, the following terms or expressions are used with the meaning indicated:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Photography</td>
<td>the process of recording pictures by means of capturing light on a light-sensitive medium, e.g. silver halide based chemical or an electronic image sensor. Light patterns reflected or emitted from objects expose such a light sensitive medium during a timed exposure, usually through a photographic lens in a device known as a camera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Camera</td>
<td>a device capturing image information represented by light patterns reflected or emitted from objects, and exposing a light sensitive film or an electronic image sensor during a timed exposure, usually through an optical lens, and producing an image on a light sensitive film or an electrical image information signal respectively</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Projector</td>
<td>a device displaying image information by projection of light patterns, usually through an optical lens, wherein the light patterns are generated by illuminating an image, e.g. film or slide, or by converting an electric image signal into an optical signal using an electronic spatial light modulator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EIS</td>
<td>Electronic image sensor: optoelectronic transducer, converting optical image information into an electrical signal susceptible of being processed, stored, transmitted or displayed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Additional sensor | a sensor, other than the electronic image sensor, used for controlling a camera
---|---
ESLM | Electronic spatial light modulator: optoelectronic transducer converting electric signals representing image information into optical image information
Record | A registration (e.g. of sound or images) in permanent form by optical or electrical means for later reproduction

**Synonyms and Keywords**

*In patent documents, the following abbreviations are often used:*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SSIS</td>
<td>Solid State Image Sensor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCD</td>
<td>Charge-Coupled Device</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>APS</td>
<td>active pixel sensor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CDS</td>
<td>correlated double sensing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CMOS</td>
<td>Complementary metal–oxide–semiconductor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CIS</td>
<td>CMOS image sensor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AE</td>
<td>automatic exposure control</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FPN</td>
<td>fixed pattern noise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NUC</td>
<td>non uniformity correction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HDR</td>
<td>high dynamic range</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GUI</td>
<td>graphics user interface</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AF</td>
<td>autofocus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AFE</td>
<td>analog front end</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AGC</td>
<td>automatic gain control</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DSP</td>
<td>digital signal processor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENG</td>
<td>electronic news gathering</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PTZ</td>
<td>pan tilt zoom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EVF</td>
<td>electronic viewfinder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OVF</td>
<td>optical viewfinder</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*In patent documents, the following words/expressions are often used as synonyms:*

- "digital photography", "digital camera", "camcorder", "video camera", "still video", "camera" and "digital still camera"
**H04N 5/225**

Television cameras {; Cameras comprising an electronic image sensor, e.g. digital cameras, video cameras, camcorders, webcams, camera modules specially adapted for being embedded in other devices, e.g. mobile phones, computers or vehicles (constructional details of electronic still picture cameras or digital still picture cameras not peculiar to the presence or use of the electronic image sensor G03B)}

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

Constructional details of cameras (housing, mounting of optical parts, mounting of image sensing part, other camera parts). For example: camera module, endoscopes, borescopes.

**References**

**Limiting references**

*This place does not cover:*

| Constructional details in electronic still picture cameras, digital still picture cameras not peculiar to the presence or use of the electronic image sensor | G03B |

**Informative references**

*Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:*

| Cameras used as input-only client peripherals for selective content distribution | H04N 21/4223 |
| Optical systems | G02B |
| Associated working of recording or reproducing apparatus with TV camera or receiver in which the television signal is not significantly involved | G11B 31/006 |
| Tubes | H01J |

**H04N 5/2251**

{Constructional details}

**References**

**Informative references**

*Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:*

| Arrangement comprising a plurality of cameras | H04N 5/247 |
H04N 5/232

Devices for controlling television cameras, e.g. remote control {; Control of cameras comprising an electronic image sensor} (H04N 5/235 takes precedence {; Mountings, adjusting means, or light-tight connections, for optical elements G02B 7/00})

Definition statement

This place covers:
Internal and external camera control. For example, autofocus, computer aided image capture, camera with further processing without influencing image capture process, camera control programs, detect malfunction, dust removal, face recognition aid, GUI (graphics user interface), modes like viewfinder or playback mode, autofocus mode, video mode, still capture mode, etc., panoramic field of view, power saving or management, shutter delay, image capture speed, synthesis of images in camera, image resolution change, zoom, remote control, camera shake detection and correction, control via network, etc.

References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Circuitry for compensating for variation in the brightness of the object</th>
<th>H04N 5/235</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mountings, adjusting means, or light-tight connections, for optical elements</td>
<td>G02B 7/00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

H04N 5/23212

{Focusing based on image signals provided by the electronic image sensor}

Relationships with other classification places

Focusing aids not based on image signals provided by an electronic image sensor are classified in G03B 13/18. Constructional details of means for focusing for cameras are classified in G03B 13/32.

References

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Generation of focusing signals in general | G02B 7/28 |

H04N 5/232121

{and on active ranging signals, e.g. using light or sound signals emitted toward objects}

Relationships with other classification places

Rangefinders coupled with focusing arrangements are classified in G03B 13/20.
H04N 5/232133
{Bracketing relating to the capture of varying focusing conditions}

References
Informative references
Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

Bracketing for compensating for variations in the brightness

H04N 5/2356

H04N 5/23216
{Control of parameters, e.g. field or angle of view of camera via graphical user interface, e.g. touchscreen}

Definition statement
This place covers:
User interfaces to control camera parameters which can be separated from or integrated in the camera.

References
Informative references
Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

GUI specifically adapted for controlling image capture or setting capture parameters, e.g. using a touchscreen

H04N 5/232933

H04N 5/23218
{Control of camera operation based on recognized objects}

References
Informative references
Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

Object recognition per se

G06K 9/00

H04N 5/23219
{where the recognized objects include parts of the human body, e.g. human faces, facial parts or facial expressions}

References
Informative references
Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

Face recognition per se

G06K 9/00221
H04N 5/23241
{Control of camera operation in relation to power supply}

Relationships with other classification places
Details of energy supply or management for digital still cameras not peculiar to the electronic image sensor are classified in G03B 7/26 or G03B 2217/007.

H04N 5/23293
{Electronic viewfinders}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Camera viewfinders displaying image signals provided by an electronic image sensor and optionally displaying additional information related to control or operation of the camera.

Relationships with other classification places
Camera viewfinders not displaying image signals provided by an electronic image sensor are classified in G03B 13/02.

H04N 5/232933
{Graphical User Interface [GUI] specifically adapted for controlling image capture or setting capture parameters, e.g. using a touchscreen}

Definition statement
This place covers:
A graphical user interface, e.g. a touchscreen, which is integrated on an electronic viewfinder.

References
Informative references
Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Control of parameters, e.g. field/angle of view of camera via graphical user interface, e.g. touchscreen | H04N 5/23216 |

H04N 5/23299
{Controlling the position of the camera for changing the field of view, e.g. panning, tilting or tracking of objects (TV type tracking systems G01S 3/7864; tracking movement of a target in burglar, theft or intruder alarms, using TV cameras G08B 13/19608)}

References
Limiting references
This place does not cover:

| TV type tracking system | G01S 3/7864 |
Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

- Analysis of motion by image processing in general
  - G06T 7/20
- Determining position or orientation of objects by image processing in general
  - G06T 7/70

H04N 5/235

Circuitry {or methods} for compensating for variation in the brightness of the object {, e.g. based on electric image signals provided by an electronic image sensor}

Definition statement

This place covers:

Circuitry for compensating for variation in the brightness of the object. For example, dynamic range increase, bracketing, use of brightness histograms or brightness compensation by controlling shutter, filter, gain, or illumination means.

References

Application-oriented references

Examples of places where the subject matter of this place is covered when specially adapted, used for a particular purpose, or incorporated in a larger system:

- Control of the solid-state image sensors depending on the scene, e.g. brightness
  - H04N 5/351

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

- Exposure control for film cameras or cameras using an additional sensor
  - G03B 7/00

H04N 5/2356

{Bracketing, i.e. taking a series of images with varying exposure conditions}

References

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

- Bracketing for focusing
  - H04N 5/232133
H04N 5/247
Arrangements of television cameras {(constructional details of cameras H04N 5/2251)}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Systems using several cameras.

References
Limiting references
This place does not cover:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Constructional details of cameras</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>H04N 5/2251</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

H04N 5/253
Picture signal generating by scanning motion picture films or slide opaques, e.g. for telecine (scanning details therefor H04N 3/36 {; standard conversion therefor H04N 7/0112})

Definition statement
This place covers:
Picture signal generation by scanning motion picture films i.e. cinematographic films in video signals e.g. telecine.

References
Limiting references
This place does not cover:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Scanning details therefor</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>H04N 3/36</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standards conversion therefor</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>H04N 7/0112</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Application-oriented references
Examples of places where the subject matter of this place is covered when specially adapted, used for a particular purpose, or incorporated in a larger system:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Scanning of colour motion picture films, e.g. for telecine</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>H04N 9/11</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

H04N 5/257
Picture signal generators using flying-spot scanners (H04N 5/253 takes precedence)

Definition statement
This place covers:
Obsolete technology.
References

Limiting references
This place does not cover:

| Picture signal generating by scanning motion picture films or slide opaques | H04N 5/253 |

H04N 5/262

Studio circuits, e.g. for mixing, switching-over, change of character of image, other special effects {; Cameras specially adapted for the electronic generation of special effects}

Definition statement
This place covers:

Studio circuits providing video special effects like combining different images, changing image aspect (geometric, orientation, etc.) or aesthetic/artistic aspect, providing transitions between images, background and foreground images synthesizing, mixing and switching.

H04N 5/268

Signal distribution or switching

References

Application-oriented references
Examples of places where the subject matter of this place is covered when specially adapted, used for a particular purpose, or incorporated in a larger system:

| Arrangements for broadcast or for distribution combined with broadcast | H04H 20/00 |

H04N 5/28

Mobile studios

Definition statement
This place covers:

Mobile studios, e.g. television studio equipment installed in vehicles for outdoor broadcasting.

References

Application-oriented references
Examples of places where the subject matter of this place is covered when specially adapted, used for a particular purpose, or incorporated in a larger system:

| Broadcast communication aspects of mobile studios | H04H 60/05 |
H04N 5/30

Transforming light or analogous information into electric information (H04N 5/222 takes precedence; scanning details H04N 3/00)

Definition statement

This place covers:
Photoelectric converting image sensors not classified in others subgroups.

References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Scanning details</th>
<th>H04N 3/00</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Studio circuitry; Studio devices; Studio equipment</td>
<td>H04N 5/222</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Light transforming elements | H01J, H01L |

H04N 5/32

Transforming X-rays {(image transformers H01J 31/00)}

Definition statement

This place covers:
Devices and applications with image sensors transforming X-rays.

References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

| Image transformers | H01J 31/00 |

Application-oriented references

Examples of places where the subject matter of this place is covered when specially adapted, used for a particular purpose, or incorporated in a larger system:

| Investigating or analyzing materials by the use of wave or particle radiation, e.g. X-rays, by transmitting the radiation through the material and forming a picture | G01N 23/04 |

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Non-uniformity correction | H04N 5/357 |
**H04N 5/33**

**Transforming infra-red radiation**

**Definition statement**

_This place covers:_

Devices and applications with image sensors transforming infra-red radiation.

**References**

**Informative references**

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Non-uniformity correction                      | H04N 5/357       |
| Detection of the presence or absence of infrared radiation, not otherwise provided for | G01J             |

**H04N 5/335**

**using solid-state image sensors [SSIS] (H04N 5/32, H04N 5/33 take precedence)**

**Definition statement**

_This place covers:_

Circuitry and processing specific to e.g. CMOS or CCD solid state image sensors; includes particular sampling pattern e.g. windowing; includes noise correction e.g. defect pixels, dark current correction; includes particular functions achieved by scanning e.g. electronic shutter, control of the dynamic range.

**References**

**Limiting references**

_This place does not cover:_

| Transforming X-rays                            | H04N 5/32       |
| Transforming infra-red radiation               | H04N 5/33       |

**Informative references**

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Imager structures consisting of a plurality of semiconductor or other solid-state components formed in or on a common substrate | H01L 27/146 |
| Charged coupled imagers                         | H01L 27/148    |

**Special rules of classification**

- In this group, the first place priority rule is applied, i.e. at each hierarchical level, in the absence of an indication to the contrary, classification is made in the first appropriate place.
• In many cases it is useful to supplement an identified function covered in the range [H04N 5/335-H04N 5/3675] with an Indexing Code corresponding to the sensor technology CCD/MOS covered in H04N 5/372, H04N 5/374 or H04N 5/3745. As an example a dark current correction for CCD would be classified in H04N 5/361 and additionally Indexing Code H04N 5/372.

• The sensor matrix defined in H04N 5/3745 is not meant to include the associated circuits. An A/D converter in an output register is classified in H04N 5/3742 or H04N 5/378 but not in H04N 5/37455.

• Although not always specific to SSIS the noise/distortion produced by a lens is nevertheless classified in H04N 5/3572 and not in H04N 5/217. This has been done to facilitate the search. Corrections of chromatic aberrations, which can also be related to lenses are classified in H04N 9/045. All other noise suppression or disturbance minimisation in picture signal generation e.g. in a camera having an EIS should be classified in H04N 5/217.

• Two groups specific to colour aspects are presently defined in H04N 9/04511 and H04N 5/3537, it avoids splitting an identical function between the H04N 5/335 and H04N 9/045.

H04N 5/351
Control of the SSIS depending on the scene, e.g. brightness or motion in the scene

References
Informative references
Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Circuitry for compensating for variation in the brightness of the object | H04N 5/235 |

H04N 5/357
Noise processing, e.g. detecting, correcting, reducing or removing noise

References
Informative references
Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Circuitry for suppressing or minimizing disturbance in picture signal generation | H04N 5/217 |

H04N 5/361
applied to dark current

Definition statement
This place covers:

Subject matter related to dark current noise, also referred to as black level or optical black, which is generated electrons within the image signals of the pixels of an electronic image sensor that are not generated from the light received at the pixels during capture of an image. It is generally due to generation of electrons within the pixels from the surrounding circuitry and can also vary with respect to operational temperature of the electronic image sensor.
**H04N 5/369**

SSIS architecture; Circuitry associated therewith

**References**

*Informative references*

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

- Imager structures, as devices consisting of a plurality of semiconductor or other solid-state components formed in or on a common surface, per se.  

**H04N 5/36965**

{the other type of pixels are pixels for depth measurement, e.g. RGBZ where Z is the depth pixel or embedded time-of-flight pixels (depth pixels used only for focusing **H04N 5/36961**} 

**References**

*Limiting references*

This place does not cover:

- Depth pixels used only for focusing  

**Informative references*

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

- Time-of-flight in general  

**H04N 5/374**

Addressed sensors, e.g. MOS or CMOS sensors

**References**

*Informative references*

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

- CMOS imager structures  
- Charged coupled imagers per se  

**H04N 5/376**

Addressing circuits

**References**

*Informative references*

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

- Arrangements for selecting an address in a digital store  


H04N 5/378
Readout circuits, e.g. correlated double sampling [CDS] circuits, output amplifiers or A/D converters

References
   Informative references
   Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

   | Amplifiers per se          | H03F                  |
   | Analogue/digital conversion per se | H03M 1/00             |

H04N 5/38
Transmitter circuitry (H04N 5/14 takes precedence)

References
   Limiting references
   This place does not cover:

   | Picture signal circuitry for video frequency region | H04N 5/14 |

Informative references
   Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

   | Transmitter circuits per se | H04B 1/04 |

H04N 5/40
Modulation circuits

References
   Informative references
   Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

   | Digital communication modulator circuits | H01L 27/04, H01L 27/12, H01L 27/20 |
   | Modulation per se                      | H03C                      |

H04N 5/44
Receiver circuitry (H04N 5/14 takes precedence)

References
   Limiting references
   This place does not cover:

   | Picture signal circuitry for video frequency region | H04N 5/14 |
Informative references
Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

Receiver circuits per se  H04B 1/16

H04N 5/455
Demodulation-circuits

References
Informative references
Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

Digital communication demodulator circuits  H01L 27/06, H01L 27/14, H01L 27/22
Demodulation per se  H03D

H04N 5/46
for receiving on more than one standard at will (deflecting circuits of multi-standard receivers H04N 3/27)

References
Limiting references
This place does not cover:

Deflecting circuits of multi-standard receivers  H04N 3/27

H04N 5/50
Tuning indicators; Automatic tuning control

References
Informative references
Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

Tuning resonant circuits per se  H03J
Automatic frequency control per se  H03J 7/02

H04N 5/52
Automatic gain control

References
Informative references
Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

Automatic gain control in amplifiers per se  H03G 3/20
**H04N 5/63**

Generation or supply of power specially adapted for television receivers

**References**

**Application-oriented references**

Examples of places where the subject matter of this place is covered when specially adapted, used for a particular purpose, or incorporated in a larger system:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Classification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Generation of supply voltages, in combination with electron beam deflecting</td>
<td>H04N 3/18</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Informative references**

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Classification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Regulating of voltage or current in general</td>
<td>G05F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transformers</td>
<td>H01F 29/00; H01F 30/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Supplying or distributing electric power, in general</td>
<td>H02J</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Static converters</td>
<td>H02M</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**H04N 5/64**

Constructional details of receivers, e.g. cabinets or dust covers (furniture aspects {of television cabinets} **A47B 81/06**)

**References**

**Limiting references**

This place does not cover:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Classification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Furniture aspects of television cabinets</td>
<td>A47B 81/06</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Application-oriented references**

Examples of places where the subject matter of this place is covered when specially adapted, used for a particular purpose, or incorporated in a larger system:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Classification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Combinations of a television receiver with apparatus having a different main function</td>
<td>H05K 11/00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Informative references**

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Classification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Constructional details of communication receivers, in general</td>
<td>H04B 1/08</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Casings, cabinets or drawers for electric apparatus, in general</td>
<td>H05K 5/00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
H04N 5/66
Transforming electric information into light information (scanning details H04N 3/00)

References
Limiting references
This place does not cover:

| Scanning details of television systems | H04N 3/00 |

Informative references
Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| electro- or magneto optic devices | G02F 1/00 |
| CRT's | H01J |

H04N 5/68
Circuit details for cathode-ray display tubes {(deviation circuits H04N 3/16)}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Circuit details of cathode-ray display tubes pertaining to the conversion of electrical information into light information, when specially adapted for television displays.

References
Limiting references
This place does not cover:

| Scanning in television systems by deflecting electron beam in cathode-ray tube | H04N 3/16 |

Informative references
Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Control arrangements or circuits, of interest only in connection with cathode-ray tube indicators | G09G 1/00 |
| Generating pulses having essentially a finite slope or stepped portion | H03K 4/00 |

H04N 5/70
Circuit details for electroluminescent devices

Definition statement
This place covers:
Circuit details of the conversion of electric information into light information in electroluminescent television displays.
References

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Control arrangements or circuits using electroluminescent elements for presentation of a single character by selection from a plurality of characters, or by composing the character by combination of individual elements | G09G 3/12 |
| Control arrangements or circuits using electroluminescent panels for presentation of an assembly of a number of characters, by composing the assembly by combination of individual elements arranged in a matrix | G09G 3/30 |

H04N 5/72

Modifying the appearance of television pictures by optical filters or diffusing screens

References

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Diffusing elements per se | G02B 5/02 |
| Optical filters per se | G02B 5/20 |

H04N 5/74

Projection arrangements for image reproduction, e.g. using eidophor

References

Application-oriented references

Examples of places where the subject matter of this place is covered when specially adapted, used for a particular purpose, or incorporated in a larger system:

| Projection devices for colour picture display | H04N 9/31 |

H04N 5/76

Television signal recording

Definition statement

This place covers:

Video data recording:

- Specially adapted recording devices such as a VCR, PVR, high speed camera, camcorder or a specially adapted PC
- Interfaces between recording devices and other devices for input and/or output of video signals such as TVs, video cameras, other recording devices
- Video recorder programming
- Adaptations of the video signal for recording on specific recording media such as HDD, tape, drums, holographic support, semiconductor memories
• Adaptations for reproducing at a rate different from the recording rate such as trick play modes and stroboscopic recording
• Processing of the video signal for noise suppression, scrambling, field or frame skip, bandwidth reduction
• Impairing the picking up, for recording, of a projected video signal
• Regeneration of either a recorded video signal or for recording the video signal
• Video signal recording wherein the recorded video signal may be accompanied by none, one or more video signals (stereoscopic signals or video signals corresponding to different story lines)
• Production of a motion picture film from a television signal

Details specific to this group:
• The recording equipment is for personal use and not for studio use
• The subgroups H04N 5/92, H04N 5/93, H04N 5/94 and H04N 5/95 are for black and white (monochrome) video signals only while the remaining subgroups H04N 5/7605, H04N 5/765, H04N 5/78, H04N 5/80, H04N 5/84, H04N 5/89, H04N 5/903, H04N 5/907 and H04N 5/91 are for both black and white and colour video signals

Relationships with other classification places
• The subject-matter in the range H04N 5/92 - H04N 5/956 deals with recording and processing for recording of only black and white video signals while H04N 9/79 - H04N 9/898 deals with recording and processing for recording colour video signals.
• H04N 5/76 (video recording) distinguishes itself from editing, which is found in G11B 27/00, in that the signals recorded and reproduced are video signals.
• H04N 5/76 is a function place for recording or processing for recording. H04N 21/433 describes applications for recording in a distribution system.
• H04N 5/76 features recording devices specially adapted to video data recording that can be programmed. The programming may be done by a user or a using an algorithm. Business methods where the video recording feature or step is well known is generally classified in G06Q 30/02.
• H04N 5/76 contains recording devices that are characterised by the connection to other devices through an interface. Typically information is sent or received by a recorder through an interface that impacts the recording or playback function. Interfaces in general are found in H04N 5/44.
• H04N 5/76 contains video cameras that record video data to a recording medium. Video cameras constructional details are found in H04N 5/225.
• H04N 5/76 is an application place for video data trick play. Reproducing data in general at a rate different from the recording rate is found in G11B 27/005.
• H04N 5/76 contains applications of video data processing for scrambling/encrypting video data for recording. Systems for rendering a video signal unintelligible are found in H04N 7/16 and H04N 21/00.
• H04N 5/76 is an application place for video data reduction for recording. Video data compression is found in H04N 19/00.

References

Application-oriented references
Examples of places where the subject matter of this place is covered when specially adapted, used for a particular purpose, or incorporated in a larger system:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Application-oriented references</th>
<th>Classification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Controlling video cameras</td>
<td>H04N 5/232</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Video surveillance</td>
<td>H04N 7/18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selective content distribution</td>
<td>H04N 21/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alarm system using video cameras</td>
<td>G08B 13/00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>CPC</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Video camera constructional details</td>
<td>H04N 5/225</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Production of a video signal from a motion picture film</td>
<td>H04N 5/253</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interfaces</td>
<td>H04N 5/44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User interface of set top boxes</td>
<td>H04N 5/44543</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Video data coding</td>
<td>H04N 19/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Network video distribution</td>
<td>H04N 21/236</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Personal video recorder in selective content distribution systems</td>
<td>H04N 21/4147</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Video data processing for printing</td>
<td>G03F 1/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Systems for buying and selling, i.e. video content</td>
<td>G06Q 30/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Business methods related to the distribution of video data content</td>
<td>G06Q 30/02</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Information storage based on relative movement between record carrier and transducer</td>
<td>G11B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Video editing</td>
<td>G11B 27/034</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recording techniques specially adapted to a recording medium for recording digital data in general</td>
<td>G11B 27/10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Control of video recorders where the video signal is not substantially involved</td>
<td>G11B 31/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Static stores</td>
<td>G11C</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Special rules of classification

A document does not explicitly mention that the video signal is a monochrome video signal is to be interpreted as being a colour video signal. As a consequence some classes in H04N 5/76 specific to monochrome signal recording have fallen out of use. Instead the corresponding colour symbols should be given to such documents:

Allocation of CPC symbols:
- A document containing invention information relating to video data recording will be given an H04N 5/76 CPC group.
- A document containing additional information relating to video data recording (in particular, if the document discloses a detailed video recording device) will be given a H04N 5/76 Indexing Code symbol.
- A document containing invention information for more than one invention it may be given more than one H04N 5/76 CPC group.
- A document merely mentioning recording will not be given an CPC group, but it may receive an Indexing Code if the disclosure is considered relevant.

Allocation of Indexing Code symbols in combination with CPC:
- When assigning H04N 5/76 as CPC group, giving an additional Indexing Code is mandatory.

Combined use of Indexing Code symbols:
- Indexing Code symbols maybe allocated as necessary to describe additional information in document.

Symbol allocation rules:
- Documents defining recording devices that have an interface, e.g., connected to a network, should have at least one of the more specific H04N 5/765 Indexing Code symbols.
• Documents dealing with invention information about measures to prevent recording of projected images should be given the H04N 2005/91392 Indexing Code symbol.

Glossary of terms

In this place, the following terms or expressions are used with the meaning indicated:

| Video or video data | Video signal, analogue or digital, with or without accompanying audio |

H04N 5/765

Interface circuits between an apparatus for recording and another apparatus

References

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Arrangements for the associated working of recording or reproducing apparatus with related apparatus | G11B 31/00 |

H04N 5/772

{the recording apparatus and the television camera being placed in the same enclosure}

Definition statement

This place covers:

Video cameras as recording devices.

References

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Television cameras | H04N 5/225 |

H04N 5/775

between a recording apparatus and a television receiver

References

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| TV-receiver details | H04N 5/44 |
| Recording/reproduction devices integrated in TV-receivers | H04N 5/445 |
| Synchronisation between a display unit and video-disc players | G09G 5/12 |
H04N 5/781  
on disks or drums  

Definition statement  
This place covers:  
Magnetic disks.

References  
Informative references  
Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>CPC Code</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Recording on, or reproducing or erasing from, magnetic drums</td>
<td>G11B 5/004</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recording on, or reproducing or erasing from, magnetic disks</td>
<td>G11B 5/012</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Magnetic drum carriers</td>
<td>G11B 5/76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Magnetic disk carriers</td>
<td>G11B 5/82</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

H04N 5/782  
on tape  

Definition statement  
This place covers:  
Video recording programming applications, although it reads (recording) "on tape".  
Video recorder programming (reservation recording).

References  
Informative references  
Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>CPC Code</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Recording on, or reproducing or erasing from, magnetic tapes</td>
<td>G11B 5/008</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Magnetic tape carriers</td>
<td>G11B 5/78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arrangements for device control affected by the broadcast information</td>
<td>H04H 60/13</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

H04N 5/7822  
with stationary magnetic heads  

References  
Informative references  
Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>CPC Code</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fixed mountings of heads relative to magnetic record carriers</td>
<td>G11B 5/49</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
H04N 5/7824
with rotating magnetic heads

References

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Disposition or mounting of heads on rotating support | G11B 5/53 |

H04N 5/783
Adaptations for reproducing at a rate different from the recording rate

Definition statement

This place covers:
- Trick play modes as well as processing for recording to enable the reproduction of video data at a rate different from the recording rate.
- High speed recording cameras.
- Speed control during recording, reproducing, reproducing at variable speed.

H04N 5/80
using electrostatic recording (H04N 5/91 takes precedence)

References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

| Television signal processing recording | H04N 5/91 |

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Recording or reproducing using electrostatic charge injection; record carriers therefor | G11B 9/08 |

H04N 5/84
using optical recording (H04N 5/80, H04N 5/89, H04N 5/91 take precedence)

References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

| Television signal recording using electrostatic recording | H04N 5/80 |
| Television signal recording using holographic recording | H04N 5/89 |
| Television signal processing for recording | H04N 5/91 |
Informative references
Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Recording or reproducing by optical means; record carriers therefor | G11B 7/00 |

H04N 5/85

on discs or drums

Definition statement
This place covers:
Optical discs.

References

Informative references
Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Recording or reproducing by optical means with cylinders | G11B 7/0025 |
| Recording or reproducing by optical means with disks | G11B 7/0037 |

H04N 5/89

using holographic recording (H04N 5/91 takes precedence)

References

Limiting references
This place does not cover:

| Television signal processing recording | H04N 5/91 |

Informative references
Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Recording, reproducing or erasing by using optical interference patterns, e.g. holograms | G11B 7/0065 |

H04N 5/903

using variable electrical capacitive recording (H04N 5/91 takes precedence)

References

Limiting references
This place does not cover:

| Television signal processing recording | H04N 5/91 |
Informative references
Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Recording or reproducing using record carriers having variable electrical capacitance; Record carriers therefor | G11B 9/06 |

H04N 5/907
using static stores, e.g. storage tubes or semiconductor memories (H04N 5/91 takes precedence)

References

Limiting references
This place does not cover:

| Television signal processing recording | H04N 5/91 |

Informative references
Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Television signal recording based on relative movement between record carrier and transducer | H04N 5/78 - H04N 5/903 |
| Static stores per se | G11C |

H04N 5/91
Television signal processing therefor

References

Application-oriented references
Examples of places where the subject matter of this place is covered when specially adapted, used for a particular purpose, or incorporated in a larger system:

| Processing of colour television signals in connection with recording | H04N 9/79 |

H04N 5/911
for the suppression of noise {(H04N 5/932 takes precedence)}

References

Limiting references
This place does not cover:

| Regeneration of analogue synchronisation signals | H04N 5/932 |
**Informative references**

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Circuitry for suppressing or minimizing disturbance in television systems in general</th>
<th>H04N 5/21</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**H04N 5/913**

for scrambling {; for copy protection}

**Definition statement**

This place covers:

- Scrambling and encryption of video data for recording.
- Copy-protection systems.

**Special rules of classification**

At least one Indexing Code H04N 5/913 symbol should be allocated to such document to further specify the scrambling method.

**H04N 5/917**

for bandwidth reduction

**Definition statement**

This place covers:

Compression of analogue video signals.

**References**

**Informative references**

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Transformation of the television signal for recording by pulse code modulation</th>
<th>H04N 5/926, H04N 9/804</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Systems in which the television signal is transmitted via one channel or a plurality of parallel channels, the bandwidth of each channel being less than the bandwidth of the television signal</td>
<td>H04N 7/12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Systems for the transmission of television signals using pulse code modulation</td>
<td>H04N 7/24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Methods or arrangements for coding, decoding, compressing or decompressing digital video signals</td>
<td>H04N 19/00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**H04N 5/919**

by dividing samples or signal segments, e.g. television lines, among a plurality of recording channels

**References**

**Application-oriented references**

Examples of places where the subject matter of this place is covered when specially adapted, used for a particular purpose, or incorporated in a larger system:

| Processing of colour television signals for recording the signal in a plurality of channels, the bandwidth of each channel being less than the bandwidth of the signal | H04N 9/797 |

**H04N 5/92**

Transformation of the television signal for recording, e.g. modulation, frequency changing; Inverse transformation for playback

**References**

**Application-oriented references**

Examples of places where the subject matter of this place is covered when specially adapted, used for a particular purpose, or incorporated in a larger system:

| Transformation of the colour television signal for recording, e.g. modulation, frequency changing; Inverse transformation for playback | H04N 9/80 |

**Informative references**

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Transmitter circuitry | H04N 5/38 |
| Receiver circuitry    | H04N 5/44 |
| Modulation            | H03C      |
| Demodulation or transference of modulation from one carrier to another | H03D |

**Special rules of classification**

The corresponding colour symbol should be allocated: H04N 9/82

**H04N 5/926**

by pulse code modulation (H04N 5/919 takes precedence)

**References**

**Limiting references**

This place does not cover:

| Television signal processing for recording for bandwidth reduction by dividing samples or signal segments | H04N 5/919 |
**Application-oriented references**

Examples of places where the subject matter of this place is covered when specially adapted, used for a particular purpose, or incorporated in a larger system:

| Transformation of the television signal for recording involving pulse code modulation of the colour picture signal components | H04N 9/804 |
| Transformation of the television signal for recording involving pulse code modulation of the composite colour video-signal | H04N 9/808 |

**H04N 5/928**

the sound signal being pulse code modulated and recorded in time division multiplex with the modulated video signal

**References**

**Application-oriented references**

Examples of places where the subject matter of this place is covered when specially adapted, used for a particular purpose, or incorporated in a larger system:

| Transformation of the television signal for recording involving pulse code modulation of the colour picture signal components with processing of the sound signal | H04N 9/806 |

**H04N 5/93**

Regeneration of the television signal or of selected parts thereof

**References**

**Application-oriented references**

Examples of places where the subject matter of this place is covered when specially adapted, used for a particular purpose, or incorporated in a larger system:

| Regeneration of colour television signals by assembling picture element blocks in an intermediate memory | H04N 9/87 |

**Special rules of classification**

The corresponding colour symbol should be allocated: H04N 9/87

**H04N 5/937**

by assembling picture element blocks in an intermediate store

**References**

**Application-oriented references**

Examples of places where the subject matter of this place is covered when specially adapted, used for a particular purpose, or incorporated in a larger system:

| Regeneration of colour television signals | H04N 9/877 |
**H04N 5/94**

Signal drop-out compensation

**References**

*Application-oriented references*

Examples of places where the subject matter of this place is covered when specially adapted, used for a particular purpose, or incorporated in a larger system:

| Signal drop-out compensation in the regeneration of colour television signals | H04N 9/88 |

**Special rules of classification**

The corresponding colour symbol should be allocated: **H04N 9/88**

**H04N 5/945**

for signals recorded by pulse code modulation

**References**

*Application-oriented references*

Examples of places where the subject matter of this place is covered when specially adapted, used for a particular purpose, or incorporated in a larger system:

| Signal drop-out compensation for signals recorded by pulse code modulation in the regeneration of colour television signals | H04N 9/888 |

**Informative references**

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Error detection or correction of digital signals for recording in general | G11B 20/18 |

**H04N 5/95**

Time-base error compensation {(**H04N 5/932** takes precedence)}

**References**

*Limiting references*

This place does not cover:

| Regeneration of analogue synchronisation signals | H04N 5/932 |

*Application-oriented references*

Examples of places where the subject matter of this place is covered when specially adapted, used for a particular purpose, or incorporated in a larger system:

| Time-base error compensation in the regeneration of colour television signals | H04N 9/89 |
**Special rules of classification**

The corresponding colour symbol should be allocated: H04N 9/89

**H04N 5/953**

by using an analogue memory, e.g. a CCD shift register, the delay of which is controlled by a voltage controlled oscillator

**References**

*Application-oriented references*

Examples of places where the subject matter of this place is covered when specially adapted, used for a particular purpose, or incorporated in a larger system:

- Time-base error compensation using an analog memory, e.g. a CCD-shift register, the delay of which is controlled by a voltage controlled oscillator, in the regeneration of colour television signals
  - H04N 9/893

**H04N 5/956**

by using a digital memory with independent write-in and read-out clock generators

**References**

*Application-oriented references*

Examples of places where the subject matter of this place is covered when specially adapted, used for a particular purpose, or incorporated in a larger system:

- Time-base error compensation using a digital memory with independent write-in and read-out clock generators, in the regeneration of colour television signals
  - H04N 9/898

**H04N 7/00**

Television systems (details H04N 3/00, H04N 5/00; methods or arrangements, for coding, decoding, compressing or decompressing digital video signals H04N 19/00; selective content distribution H04N 21/00)

**Definition statement**

This place covers:

- structural or hardware-related aspects of television systems, involving
- analogue television signals or digital television signals processed at low level (e.g. physical layer in the OSI model);
- details on conversion of television standards;
- circuits for recovering digital non-picture data in analogue television signals;
- specific arrangements allowing transmission of television signals via electric cables, optical fibres or using a GHz frequency band.
Relationships with other classification places

H04N 5/00 covers details of television systems and circuitry for processing analogue television signals or digital television signals processed at pixel level. Conversion between television standards and circuits for recovering digital non-picture data (slicers) are however classified in H04N 7/00.

H04N 9/00 and H04N 11/00 are to be considered when the focus is on colour aspects.

Aspects of diagnosis, testing and measuring for television systems are covered by H04N 17/00.

Television systems involving digital television signals not processed at low level should normally be classified in H04N 21/00.

Broadcast systems which are not specifically adapted for television signals should be classified in H04H.

Systems foreseen for the transmission/reception of data which may comprises inter alia television or video signals should be classified in respective telecommunication areas H04B, H04L, H04M and H04W.

General image processing not specific to television signals belongs to G06T. Video signal processing specific to visual displays belongs to G09G.

References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

- Scanning details of television systems; Combination thereof with generation of supply voltages
  - H04N 3/00
- Generation of supply voltages, in combination with electron beam deflecting
  - H04N 3/18
- Details of television systems
  - H04N 5/00
- Details of systems specific to colour television
  - H04N 9/00
- Methods or arrangements for coding, decoding, compressing or decompressing digital video signals
  - H04N 19/00
- Selective content distribution
  - H04N 21/00

Application-oriented references

Examples of places where the subject matter of this place is covered when specially adapted, used for a particular purpose, or incorporated in a larger system:

- Colour television systems
  - H04N 11/00
- Stereoscopic television systems
  - H04N 13/00

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

- Instruments for performing medical examinations of the interior of cavities or tubes of the body by visual or photographic inspection, e.g. endoscopes
  - A61B 1/00
- Aspects of video games
  - A63F 13/00
### Special rules of classification

A document containing invention information relating to one of the subgroups will be given the relating CPC symbol.

A document containing additional information relating to one of the subgroups will be given the relating Indexing Code.

A document merely mentioning a television system will not be given a CPC symbol, but it may receive an Indexing Code if the disclosure is considered relevant.

### Glossary of terms

*In this place, the following terms or expressions are used with the meaning indicated:*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3:2 pull-down pattern</td>
<td>A pattern of images where the first image is repeated 3 times and the second image is repeated twice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HDTV</td>
<td>High Definition TeleVision</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISDN</td>
<td>Integrated Services Digital Network (ISDN): a circuit-switched telephone network system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Letter-box system</td>
<td>Television system which displays images comprising a central part and black bars above and below the central part</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAC</td>
<td>Multiplexed Analogue Components (MAC): a satellite television transmission standard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Video signal</td>
<td>Television signal</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Synonyms and Keywords

*In patent documents, the following abbreviations are often used:*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CRT</td>
<td>Cathode Ray Tube, a technology of display</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CATV | Community Antenna Television
---|---
CCTV | Closed Circuit TeleVision
EPG | Electronic Programme Guide
GUI | Graphics User Interface
MATV | Master Antenna TeleVision
MPEG | Motion Picture Experts Group; a family of standards used for coding audio-visual information in a digital compressed format
PC | Personal Computer
PVR | Personal Video Recorder
STB | Set-Top Box
URL | Uniform Resource Locator
VOD | Video On Demand

**H04N 7/002**

{Special television systems not provided for by H04N 7/007 - H04N 7/18 (still pictures via a television channel H04N 1/00098)}

**References**

**Limiting references**

This place does not cover:

| Transmission of still pictures via a television channel | H04N 1/00098 |

**References out of a residual place**

Examples of places in relation to which this place is residual:

| Systems with supplementary picture signal insertion during a portion of the active part of a television signal, e.g. during top and bottom lines in a HDTV letter-box system | H04N 7/007 |
| Conversion of standards | H04N 7/01 |
| High-definition television systems | H04N 7/015 |
| Systems for the transmission of digital non-picture data, e.g. of text during the active part of a television frame | H04N 7/025 |
| Systems for the transmission of one television signal, i.e. both picture and sound, by a single carrier | H04N 7/04 |
| Systems for the simultaneous transmission of one television signal, i.e. both picture and sound, by more than one carrier | H04N 7/06 |
| Systems for the simultaneous or sequential transmission of more than one television signal, e.g. additional information signals, the signals occupying wholly or partially the same frequency band | H04N 7/08 |
| Adaptations for transmission by electric cable | H04N 7/10 |
| Systems in which the television signal is transmitted via one channel or a plurality of parallel channels, the bandwidth of each channel being less than the bandwidth of the television signal | H04N 7/12 |
Systems for two-way working

Analogue secrecy systems; Analogue subscription systems

Closed circuit television systems, i.e. systems in which the signal is not broadcast

Adaptations for transmission via a GHz frequency band, e.g. via satellite

Adaptations for optical transmission

Systems for the transmission of television signals using pulse code modulation

H04N 7/007

{Systems with supplementary picture signal insertion during a portion of the active part of a television signal, e.g. during top and bottom lines in a HDTV letter-box system}

Definition statement

This place covers:

• systems with auxiliary information data allowing improved picture quality transmitted during the active part of the TV signal, e.g. in black bands at the upper and lower edges of the picture;
• letter-box systems.

H04N 7/01

Conversion of standards {, e.g. involving analogue television standards or digital television standards processed at pixel level}

References

Application-oriented references

Examples of places where the subject matter of this place is covered when specially adapted, used for a particular purpose, or incorporated in a larger system:

Conversion of colour television standards

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

Studio circuits for television systems involving alteration of picture size or orientation

Receiver circuitry for receiving on more than one standard at will

Saving bandwidth in low bit-rate video transmission

Circuits specific for processing colour signals

Processing specific to video coder/decoder: subsampling at the coder and/or sample restitution by interpolation at the coder or decoder

Processing specific to video coder/decoder: transcoding to realise interoperability between different video coding standards

Image scaling in general

Video signal processing specific to visual displays
Adapting incoming signals to the display format of the display terminal

Frame rate conversion for reducing blurring effect in a hold-type liquid crystal display (LCD)

Interpolation filters

Synonyms and Keywords

In patent documents, the following abbreviations are often used:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>FRC</td>
<td>Frame Rate Converter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FRUC</td>
<td>Frame Rate Up-Converter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MC-FRC</td>
<td>Motion Compensation - Frame Rate Converter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NTSC</td>
<td>National Television System Committee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PAL</td>
<td>Phase alternating line</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SECAM</td>
<td>Séquentiel couleur à mémoire (Sequential Colour with Memory)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

H04N 7/015

High-definition television systems

Definition statement

This place covers:

• analogue high-definition systems;
• digital high-definition systems when they do not fall within the scope of other groups (H04N 13/00, H04N 19/00, H04N 21/00).

References

Application-oriented references

Examples of places where the subject matter of this place is covered when specially adapted, used for a particular purpose, or incorporated in a larger system:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>High-definition colour television systems</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>H04N 11/24</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

H04N 7/025

Systems for the transmission of digital non-picture data, e.g. of text during the active part of a television frame {{transmission of digital non-picture data during the vertical blanking interval only [H04N 7/088]}}

Definition statement

This place covers:

Systems using the active part of a television signal or part of it for transmitting digital non-picture data not foreseen to be watched as such on a display.
References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Transmission of still pictures via a television channel</th>
<th>H04N 1/00098</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Transmission of digital non-picture data during the vertical blanking interval</td>
<td>H04N 7/088</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**H04N 7/035**

Circuits for the digital non-picture data signal, e.g. for slicing of the data signal, for regeneration of the data-clock signal, for error detection or correction of the data signal

Definition statement

This place covers:

- Circuits for recovering data transmitted during the non-active part of the television signal, e.g. vertical or horizontal blanking interval;
- Circuits for recovering data transmitted during the active part of the television signal instead of the pictorial signal.

**H04N 7/04**

Systems for the transmission of one television signal, i.e. both picture and sound, by a single carrier {(H04N 7/084, H04N 7/087 take precedence)}

Definition statement

This place covers:

Systems for transmitting in a particular way both picture and sound by a single carrier.

References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Systems for the transmission of more than one television signal of with signal insertion during the horizontal blanking interval</th>
<th>H04N 7/084</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Systems for the transmission of more than one television signal of with signal insertion during the vertical blanking interval</td>
<td>H04N 7/087</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**H04N 7/06**

Systems for the simultaneous transmission of one television signal, i.e. both picture and sound, by more than one carrier {(H04N 7/084, H04N 7/087 take precedence)}

Definition statement

This place covers:

Systems for transmitting in a particular way both picture and sound by more than one carrier.
References

**Limiting references**

This place does not cover:

| Systems for the transmission of more than one television signal with signal insertion during the horizontal blanking interval | H04N 7/084 |
| Systems for the transmission of more than one television signal with signal insertion during the vertical blanking interval | H04N 7/087 |

**H04N 7/08**

Systems for the simultaneous or sequential transmission of more than one television signal, e.g. additional information signals, the signals occupying wholly or partially the same frequency band {, e.g. by time division (H04N 7/007 takes precedence)}

References

**Application-oriented references**

Examples of places where the subject matter of this place is covered when specially adapted, used for a particular purpose, or incorporated in a larger system:

| Systems with supplementary picture signal insertion during a portion of the active part of a television signal, e.g. during top and bottom lines in an HDTV letter-box system | H04N 7/007 |

Synonyms and Keywords

In patent documents, the following abbreviations are often used:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CC</th>
<th>Closed Caption</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CRI</td>
<td>Clock Run-In</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HBI</td>
<td>Horizontal Blanking Interval</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RIC</td>
<td>Run-In Clock</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VBI</td>
<td>Vertical Blanking Interval</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**H04N 7/10**

Adaptations for transmission by electrical cable (H04N 7/12 takes precedence)

References

**Limiting references**

This place does not cover:

| Systems in which the television signal is transmitted via one channel or a plurality of parallel channels, the bandwidth of each channel being less than the bandwidth of the television signal | H04N 7/12 |
Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Coaxial connectors for coaxial cables</td>
<td>H01R 24/40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Networks for connecting several sources or loads, working on different frequencies or frequency bands, to a common load or source, particularly adapted for use in common antenna systems</td>
<td>H03H 7/461</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Networks for connecting several sources or loads, working on the same frequency or frequency band, to a common load or source, particularly adapted for use in common antenna systems</td>
<td>H03H 7/482</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Line transmission systems, in general</td>
<td>H04B 3/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Repeater circuits for signals in two different frequency ranges transmitted in opposite directions over the same transmission path</td>
<td>H04B 3/38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arrangements of wired systems for broadcast</td>
<td>H04H 20/76, H04H 60/93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CATV systems</td>
<td>H04H 20/78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Home automation networks</td>
<td>H04L 12/2803</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Distribution of signals within a home automation network, e.g. involving splitting/multiplexing signals to/from different paths</td>
<td>H04L 12/2838</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

H04N 7/12

Systems in which the television signal is transmitted via one channel or a plurality of parallel channels, the bandwidth of each channel being less than the bandwidth of the television signal (H04N 7/24 takes precedence)

References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Systems for the transmission of television signals using pulse code modulation</td>
<td>H04N 7/24</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Application-oriented references

Examples of places where the subject matter of this place is covered when specially adapted, used for a particular purpose, or incorporated in a larger system:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Colour television systems with bandwidth reduction</td>
<td>H04N 11/02</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Scanning details of television systems</td>
<td>H04N 3/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High-definition television systems</td>
<td>H04N 7/015</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**H04N 7/14**

Systems for two-way working ({{H04N 7/12, } H04N 7/173} take precedence)

**References**

*Limiting references*

This place does not cover:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>CPC</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Systems in which the television signal is transmitted via one channel or</td>
<td>H04N 7/12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a plurality of parallel channels, the bandwidth of each channel being less</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>than the bandwidth of the television signal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Analogue secrecy or subscription systems with two-way working, e.g.</td>
<td>H04N 7/173</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subscriber sending a programme selection signal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Application-oriented references*

Examples of places where the subject matter of this place is covered when specially adapted, used for a particular purpose, or incorporated in a larger system:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>CPC</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Client devices specifically adapted for the reception of, or interaction</td>
<td>H04N 21/40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>with, content, e.g. STB [set-to-box]; Operations thereof</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Informative references*

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>CPC</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Systems for two-way working in the scanning, transmission or reproduction</td>
<td>H04N 1/42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of documents or the like</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Telephonic communication systems combined with television receiver for</td>
<td>H04M 11/085</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reception of entertainment or information matter</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**H04N 7/15**

Conference systems

**References**

*Informative references*

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>CPC</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Systems for two-way working between two video terminals, e.g. videophone</td>
<td>H04N 7/141</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arrangements for conference in data switching networks</td>
<td>H04L 12/18, H04L 12/1813</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Telephonic conference arrangements</td>
<td>H04M 3/56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multimedia conference systems</td>
<td>H04M 3/567</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**H04N 7/16**

Analogue secrecy systems; Analogue subscription systems

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

Television systems, where transmitters such as head-ends distribute analog television signals to television receivers. Typically, the access to analog television information is restricted based on a subscription system, where the television viewer will be charged for accessing the programs he/she has selected. To prevent eavesdropping, the transmitted analog signals are scrambled by the transmitter, e.g. in the time or amplitude domain, and descrambled at reception. Such systems can work in a unidirectional mode, where the transmitter decides which analog television programs the subscriber is entitled to view or in a bidirectional mode, where the user can request to view a movie.

**Relationships with other classification places**

Unidirectional or bidirectional television systems involving the distribution of digital video signals fall within the scope of H04N 21/00.

**References**

**Informative references**

*Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Secrecy systems in the scanning, transmission or reproduction of documents or the like</th>
<th>H04N 1/44</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Secret communication</td>
<td>H04K</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**H04N 7/161**

{Constructional details of the subscriber equipment (H04N 7/164 takes precedence)}

**References**

**Limiting references**

*This place does not cover:*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Coin-freed apparatus</th>
<th>H04N 7/164</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Informative references**

*Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:*

| Coin-freed and like apparatus in general                                          | G07F       |
H04N 7/162

{Authorising the user terminal, e.g. by paying; Registering the use of a subscription channel, e.g. billing}

Definition statement

This place covers:

- Entitlement systems, where the receiver is entitled to access the analog television program. Usually the user is billed therefor
- Analog conditional access systems

References

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>CPC</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Payment schemes</td>
<td>G06Q 20/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E-commerce</td>
<td>G06Q 30/00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

H04N 7/163

{by receiver means only}

Definition statement

This place covers:

Television programs are broadcast in a scrambled form and only receivers fitted with e.g. a conditional access card can descramble them.

H04N 7/165

{Centralised control of user terminal (subsequent to an upstream request signal H04N 7/17345); Registering at central (by two-way working H04N 7/17309)}

Definition statement

This place covers:

Systems where typically head-ends select which receivers are entitled to receive the analog television programs.

References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>CPC</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Registering at central by two-way working</td>
<td>H04N 7/17309</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Centralised control of user terminal subsequent to an upstream request signal</td>
<td>H04N 7/17345</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
H04N 7/167
Systems rendering the television signal unintelligible and subsequently intelligible

Definition statement
This place covers:
- Systems operating in the time domain, e.g. by displacing synchronisation signals relative to active picture signals or vice versa or by changing or reversing the order of active picture signal portions
- Systems operating in the amplitude domain, e.g. by modifying synchronisation signals or by inverting the polarity of active picture signal portions

References
Informative references
Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Secret communication by adding a second signal to make the desired signal unintelligible | H04K 1/02 |

H04N 7/1675
{Providing digital key or authorisation information for generation or regeneration of the scrambling sequence (pseudo-random number generators in general G06F 7/58)}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Scrambling or descrambling of analog television signals based on digital keys

References
Limiting references
This place does not cover:

| Pseudo-random number generators in general | G06F 7/58 |
| Computer security                         | G06F 21/00 |
| Cryptography in general                    | H04L 9/00  |
| Network security                           | H04L 29/06551 |

H04N 7/173
with two-way working, e.g. subscriber sending a programme selection signal

Definition statement
This place covers:
Bidirectional systems
References

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Systems for two-way working in the scanning, transmission or reproduction of documents or the like | H04N 1/42 |
| Client devices specifically adapted for the reception of, or interaction with, content, e.g. STB [set-top-box]; Operations thereof | H04N 21/40 |

H04N 7/17309

{Transmission or handling of upstream communications}

Definition statement

This place covers:
Details of analog signal processing, coding or modulating in the upstream channel

H04N 7/17318

{Direct or substantially direct transmission and handling of requests}

Definition statement

This place covers:
Typically on-demand systems for analog TV programs

H04N 7/17336

{Handling of requests in head-ends}

Definition statement

This place covers:
Details of analog Video-on-Demand servers

H04N 7/18

Closed circuit television systems, i.e. systems in which the signal is not broadcast {{(television transmission of measured quantities G01D 5/39; intruder alarm or detection by television surveillance G08B 13/196)}}

References

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

<p>| Signal generation from motion picture films | H04N 5/253 |
| Instruments for performing medical examinations of the interior of cavities or tubes of the body combined with television appliances | A61B 1/04 |
| Arrangements in vehicles for holding or mounting or controlling radio sets, television sets, telephones, or the like | B60R 11/02 |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>H04N 7/18 (continued)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

| Mounting of cameras operative during drive of a vehicle; Arrangements of control thereof relative to the vehicle | B60R 11/04 |
| Arrangements for entertainment or communications for passenger or crew in aircraft, e.g. radio, television | B64D 11/0015 |
| Scanning a visible indication of a measured value and reproducing this indication at a remote place, e.g. on the screen of a cathode-ray tube | G01D 5/39 |
| Recognition of data in general | G06K |
| Image processing in general | G06T |
| Burglar, theft, or intruder alarms using television cameras | G08B 13/196 |

**H04N 7/20**

Adaptations for transmission via a GHz frequency band, e.g. via satellite

**References**

**Informative references**

*Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:*

| Space-based or airborne stations for radio transmission systems | H04B 7/185 |
| Arrangements of satellite networks for broadcast | H04H 20/74 |

**H04N 7/22**

Adaptations for optical transmission

**References**

**Informative references**

*Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:*

| Transmission systems employing electromagnetic waves other than radio waves, e.g. light | H04B 10/00 |
| Arrangements of optical systems for broadcast | H04H 20/69 |

**H04N 7/24**

Systems for the transmission of television signals using pulse code modulation (*H04N 21/00* takes precedence)

**References**

**Limiting references**

*This place does not cover:*

| Source coding or decoding of a digital video signal | H04N 19/00 |
| Error protection or correction of a digital video signal | H04N 19/89 |
| Selective content distribution, e.g. interactive television | H04N 21/00 |
**Application-oriented references**

Examples of places where the subject matter of this place is covered when specially adapted, used for a particular purpose, or incorporated in a larger system:

| Colour television systems using pulse code modulation | H04N 11/04 |

**Informative references**

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Transmission systems using pulse code modulation, in general | H04B 14/04 |

**Special rules of classification**

**H04N 7/52**

Systems for transmission of a pulse code modulated video signal with one or more other pulse code modulated signals, e.g. an audio signal or a synchronizing signal (assembling of a multiplex stream by combining a video stream with other content or additional data, remultiplexing of multiplex streams, insertion of stuffing bits into the multiplex stream, assembling of a packetised elementary stream at server side **H04N 21/236**; disassembling of a multiplex stream, remultiplexing of multiplex streams, extraction or processing of Service Information, disassembling of packetised elementary stream at client side **H04N 21/434**)

**References**

**Limiting references**

This place does not cover:

| Assembling of a multiplex stream, by combining a video stream with other content or additional data, remultiplexing of multiplex streams, insertion of stuffing bits into the multiplex stream, assembling of a packetised elementary stream at server side | H04N 21/236 |
| Disassembling of a multiplex stream, remultiplexing of multiplex streams, extraction or processing of Service Information, disassembling of packetised elementary stream at client side | H04N 21/434 |
H04N 7/54

the signals being synchronous \{(H04N 21/23602, H04N 21/23614, H04N 21/2365, H04N 21/2368, H04N 21/4341, H04N 21/4342, H04N 21/4347, H04N 21/4348 take precedence)\}

Definition statement

This place covers:

older multiplexing/demultiplexing and transport technologies which were used before the introduction of MPEG system layer, based on a format, e.g. a frame format, usable for transmission or recording of compressed or uncompressed video data, possibly combined with other content, e.g. audio

References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

Multiplexing/demultiplexing of asynchronous signals, e.g. MPEG system layer type signals, involving the use of transport streams, program streams

Use of PCR for clock recovery

Use of time stamps (PTS, DTS) for content synchronisation

Special rules of classification

Multiplexing/demultiplexing video and audio: H04N 21/2368, H04N 21/4341 take precedence;

multiple multiplexing/demultiplexing video and additional data: H04N 21/23614, H04N 21/4348 take precedence;

multiple multiplexing/demultiplexing several video streams: H04N 21/2365, H04N 21/4347 take precedence;

multiple multiplexing/demultiplexing isochronously with video sync, e.g. according to bit-parallel or bit-serial interface formats, as SDI: H04N 21/23602, H04N 21/4342 take precedence.

H04N 7/56

Synchronising systems therefor

Definition statement

This place covers:

Synchronisation for signals falling under H04N 7/54

References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

Use of PCR for clock recovery

H04N 21/242, H04N 21/4305
Use of time stamps (PTS, DTS) for content synchronisation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Informative references</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Synchronising of television systems, in general</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Synchronisation of generators of electronic oscillations or pulses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arrangements for synchronising receiver with transmitter in the transmission of digital information</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**H04N 9/00**

Details of colour television systems

**Definition statement**

This place covers:

- Picture signal generators
- Picture reproducers using opto-mechanical scanning, cathode-ray tubes, solid-state colour displays or projection devices
- Conversion of monochrome to colour image signals
- Colour synchronisation
- Processing brightness and chrominance signal in relation with each other
- Processing of colour signals in general as well as specifically for recording

**References**

**Application-oriented references**

Examples of places where the subject matter of this place is covered when specially adapted, used for a particular purpose, or incorporated in a larger system:

| Details of stereoscopic colour television systems | H04N 13/00 |

**Informative references**

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Scanning details of television systems, in general | H04N 3/00 |
| Details of television systems, in general | H04N 5/00 |

**Glossary of terms**

In this place, the following terms or expressions are used with the meaning indicated:

| ESLM | Electronic Spatial Light Modulator |
| DMD | Deformable mirror device |
| LCLV | Liquid Crystal Light Valve |
| D-ILA | Direct Drive Image Light Amplifier |
| HDR | High Dynamic Range |
| LCOS | Liquid Crystal On Silicon |
H04N 9/04515
{Demosaicing, e.g. interpolating colour pixel values (Computational
demosaicing G06T 3/4015)}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Demosaicing, i.e. interpolating colour pixel values, only if jointly performed in combination with pixel
scanning, image readout or different video processing operations within the image sensor.

References
Limiting references
This place does not cover:
Computational demosaicing G06T 3/4015

H04N 9/04553
{including elements transmitting or passing infrared wavelengths}

References
Informative references
Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:
Transforming infrared radiation H04N 5/33

H04N 9/097
Optical arrangements associated therewith, e.g. for beam-splitting, for colour
correction

References
Informative references
Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:
Beam splitting or combining systems per se G02B 27/10
**H04N 9/10**

using optical-mechanical scanning means only (H04N 9/11 takes precedence)

References

**Limiting references**

*This place does not cover:*

| Scanning of colour motion picture films, e.g. for telecine | H04N 9/11 |

**Informative references**

*Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:*

| Scanning by optical-mechanical means only, applicable to television systems in general | H04N 3/02 |

**H04N 9/11**

Scanning of colour motion picture films, e.g. for telecine

**References**

**Informative references**

*Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:*

| Details of scanning of motion picture films, e.g. for telecine, applicable to television systems in general | H04N 3/36 |
| Picture signal generating by scanning motion picture or slide opaques, e.g. for telecine | H04N 5/253 |

**H04N 9/12**

Picture reproducers (H04N 9/11 takes precedence)

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

Video walls (excluding multi-projection displays)

**References**

**Limiting references**

*This place does not cover:*

| Scanning of colour motion picture films, e.g. for telecine | H04N 9/11 |
| Video walls or multiscreen displays when each modular display is a projection device. | H04N 9/3147 |
Informative references
Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Devices or arrangements for the electro-, magneto- or acousto-optical modulation or deflection of light beams | G02F |
| Control arrangements or circuits for visual indicators characterised by the way in which colour is displayed, common to cathode-ray tubes and other visual indicators | G09G 5/02 |

**H04N 9/14**
using optical-mechanical scanning means only

**References**

**Limiting references**
This place does not cover:

| Scanning of colour motion picture films, e.g. for telecine | H04N 9/11 |

Informative references
Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Scanning by optical-mechanical means only, applicable to television systems in general | H04N 3/02 |

**H04N 9/16**
using cathode ray tubes (H04N 9/11 takes precedence)

**References**

**Limiting references**
This place does not cover:

| Scanning of colour motion picture films | H04N 9/11 |

Informative references
Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Scanning by deflecting electron beam in cathode-ray tube, applicable to television systems in general | H04N 3/16 |
| Control arrangements or circuits using colour cathode-ray tube indicators | G09G 1/28 |
| Cathode-ray tubes per se | H01J 31/00 |
H04N 9/28
Arrangements for convergence or focusing

References

Informative references
Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Modification of scanning arrangements to improve focusing in cathode-ray tubes, applicable to television systems in general</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>H04N 3/26</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

H04N 9/29
using demagnetisation or compensation of external magnetic fields

Definition statement
This place covers:
Details of degaussing circuits.

References

Informative references
Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Details of CRT or electron-beam tubes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>H01J 29/003</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

H04N 9/30
using solid-state colour display devices

References

Informative references
Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Scanning by means of electrically scanned solid-state devices, applicable to picture reproduction in television systems in general</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>H04N 3/14</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicating devices using static means to present variable information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>G09G</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

H04N 9/31
Projection devices for colour picture display {, e.g. using electronic spatial light modulators [ESLM]}

Definition statement
This place covers:
- Image projection using an electronic spatial light modulator [ESLM], i.e. processing of electrical image signals provided to the ESLM for the generation of projector control signals, for controlling the ESLM, e.g. control of the light source
- based on electronic image signal, light conditioning specially adapted for the ESLM
- in-projector image processing, electronic image data manipulation, e.g. during display or projection
• details of projectors peculiar to the use of an ESLM, e.g. dichroic
• and polarizing arrangements specially adapted for the ESLM
• remote control of projectors peculiar to the ESLM, e.g. affecting their operation, or based on a
generated image signal;
• adaptations peculiar to the use of an ESLM and/or the display, the transmission, recording or other
use of electrical image data
• and related circuitry, e.g. mounting of ESLM, integrated

Relationships with other classification places
Subclass G03B contains subject-matter relating to the following aspects:
• Aspects of apparatus/methods for projecting or viewing images using an electronic spatial light
modulator [ESLM], insofar as they correspond to those of said apparatus/methods for projecting
or viewing images using film stock, photographic film or slides, i.e. insofar as not peculiar to the
presence of the ESLM, e.g. mounting of optical elements not peculiar to the presence of the
ESLM, and their related controls not peculiar to the presence of the ESLM, e.g. cooling, beam
shaping, optical keystone correction;
• (opto-)mechanical image enhancement in printers or projectors (e.g. keystone correction);
• constructional aspects of projectors, e.g. cooling, beam shaping, light
• integrating means not peculiar to the ESLM;

Subclass G02B contains subject-matter relating to the following aspects:
• Optical image modulation using direction light control e.g. deformable mirror devices (DMD’s),
• laser speckle optics,
• head-up projection displays (head-mounted displays).

Subclass G02F contains subject-matter relating to the following aspects:
• Control of light using liquid crystals.

Subclass G09F 9/00 contains subject-matter relating to the following aspects:
• Indicating arrangements for variable information (e.g. street or stadium displays).

References

Application-oriented references
Examples of places where the subject matter of this place is covered when specially adapted, used for
a particular purpose, or incorporated in a larger system:

| Image reproducers | H04N 13/30 |

Informative references
Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Projection arrangements for image reproduction e.g. using eidophor | H04N 5/74 - H04N 5/7491 |
| Optical systems in general | G02B |
| Devices for controlling direction of light e.g. DMD’s | G02B 26/08 |
| Head-up displays | G02B 27/01 |
| Speckle reduction | G02B 27/48 |
| Light control | G02F |
| Film projection and photography | G03B |
| Projection devices using film stock, photographic film or slides | G03B 21/00 |
Details of film projectors
Projection screens
Image processing per se
Displaying of variable information using colour tubes
Control of colour illumination sources
Liquid crystal colour display with specific pixel layout
Characterised by the way in which colour is displayed
Using circuits for interfacing with colour displays
Using colour palettes

H04N 9/3129

{scanning a light beam on the display screen (scanning a light beam on a screen in displays other than projection devices G09G 3/02; scanning systems in general G02B 26/10; projectors using laser light sources in general H04N 9/3161)}

Definition statement

This place covers:
Scanning projection devices wherein a light beam (e.g. a point beam or a linear beam from a laser or an LED) is scanned across a screen (e.g. using scanning mirrors).

References

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

Projectors using laser light sources in general H04N 9/3161
XY Scanning, scanning systems in general G02B 26/10
Laser speckle optics G02B 27/48
Semiconductors lasers H01S 5/00

H04N 9/44

Colour synchronisation

Definition statement

This place covers:
• Synchronisation of the modulated colour signal in relationship with the colour subcarrier,
• colour subcarrier generation in relationship with the extracted burst.

References

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

Synchronising, applicable to television systems in general H04N 5/04
Synchronisation of pulses

**H04N 9/64**

**Circuits for processing colour signals** *(H04N 9/77 takes precedence)*

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

- Color video sampling format conversion e.g. 4:2:2 to 4:2:0
- Gamut mapping and Colour Space Conversions
- Multiprimary colour signal conversion
- Colour sampling in digital video e.g. 4:4:4, 4:2:0, 4:1:1
- Processing of the modulated or demodulated colour television signal
- Input colour signal detection relating to the type and standard of colour signals
- Synchronous modulation and demodulation of the colour signals
- Image enhancement or disturbance suppression specific to the modulated or demodulated colour television signal
- Colour space transformation of the demodulated colour signal
- Amplitude control and gamma control of the modulated or demodulated colour television signal
- DC control control of the modulated colour television signal according to vertical blanking reference
- White balance control of the demodulated colour signal for display or at electronic image capture level
- Mixing of foreground and background colour video signals using chroma keying

**Relationships with other classification places**

With respect to colour or chrominance aspects, subclass *H04N 1/00* contains subject-matter relating to the following aspects:

- Aspects of apparatus/methods for controlling or correcting colour video signals originating from a scanned picture signal e.g. facsimile, document, photo.
- Subclass *G06T* contains subject-matter relating to the following aspects:
- General purpose data processing of an image or enhancement of such image not particularly adapted to a motion video signal
- Subclass *H03D* contains subject-matter relating to the following aspects:
- Demodulation of amplitude modulated signals

**References**

**Limiting references**

*This place does not cover:*

| Colour picture communication system | H04N 1/46 |
| Image processing per se | G06T |
| Amplitude modulated demodulation | H03D 1/00 |

**Informative references**

*Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:*

| Colour picture signal processing | H04N 1/56 |
| Facsimile colour picture signal processing | H04N 1/60 |
Special rules of classification
Demodulation circuits adapted to a particular standard are classified in:
- H04N 11/146 for NTSC,
- H04N 11/165 for PAL, and
- H04N 11/186 for SECAM.

H04N 9/641
{Multi-purpose receivers, e.g. for auxiliary information (H04N 9/642 takes precedence)}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Circuits for multiple input selection or for selecting a particular colour signal type.

References
Limiting references
This place does not cover:

Multi-standard receivers  H04N 9/642

H04N 9/642
{Multi-standard receivers}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Multistandard colour decoding circuits.

H04N 9/643
{Hue control means, e.g. flesh tone control}

Definition statement
This place covers:
- Face detection circuits,
- Hue control.
References

**Limiting references**

*This place does not cover:*

| Acquiring or recognising human faces, facial parts, facial sketches, facial expressions | G06K 9/00221 |

**Informative references**

*Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:*

| Hue control relating to non moving picture signals | H04N 1/6075 |

### H04N 9/66

for synchronous demodulators

References

**Informative references**

*Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:*

| Demodulation circuits adapted to the NTSC standard | H04N 11/146 |
| Demodulation circuits adapted to the PAL standard | H04N 11/165 |
| Demodulation circuits adapted to the SECAM standard | H04N 11/186 |

### H04N 9/67

for matrixing

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

Colour space transformation circuits.

References

**Informative references**

*Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:*

| Color space transformation circuits relating to non moving picture signals | H04N 1/6077 |

### H04N 9/68

for controlling the amplitude of colour signals, e.g. automatic chroma control circuits (*H04N 9/71, H04N 9/73 take precedence*)

References

**Limiting references**

*This place does not cover:*

| For colour killing combined with colour gain control | H04N 9/71 |
Informative references
Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Circuity for controlling amplitude response, applicable to television systems in general | H04N 5/20 |
| Circuity for reinsertion of dc and slowly varying components of signals, applicable to television systems in general | H04N 5/16 |

H04N 9/73

colour balance circuits, e.g. white balance circuits, colour temperature control

Definition statement
This place covers:
Colour balance control.

References
Informative references
Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Color balance control relating to non moving picture signals | H04N 1/60 |

H04N 9/77

Circuits for processing the brightness signal and the chrominance signal relative to each other, e.g. adjusting the phase of the brightness signal relative to the colour signal, correcting differential gain or differential phase (circuits for matrixing H04N 9/67)

Definition statement
This place covers:
- Separation of luminance and chrominance signals from a multiplexed composite colour television signal
- Processing of luminance and chrominance signals in relationship to each-other (differential gain, differential phase, luminance and chrominance correlated enhancement or noise suppression...
References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

Circuits for matrixing  

H04N 9/67

H04N 9/79

Processing of colour television signals in connection with recording

Definition statement

This place covers:

Video data recording:

• Specially adapted recording devices such as a VCR, PVR, high speed camera, camcorder or a specially adapted PC
• Interfaces between recording devices and other devices for input and/or output of video signals such as TVs, video cameras, other recording devices
• Video recorder programming
• Adaptations of the video signal for recording on specific recording media such as HDD, tape, drums, holographic support, semiconductor memories
• Adaptations for reproducing at a rate different from the recording rate such as trick play modes and stroboscopic recording
• Processing of the video signal for noise suppression, scrambling, field or frame skip, bandwidth reduction
• Impairing the picking up, for recording, of a projected video signal
• Regeneration of either a recorded video signal or for recording the video signal
• Video signal recording wherein the recorded video signal may be accompanied by none, one or more video signals (stereoscopic signals or video signals corresponding to different story lines)
• Production of a motion picture film from a television signal

Details specific to this group:

• The recording equipment is for personal use and not for studio use
• The subgroups of H04N 9/79 are for colour video signals

Relationships with other classification places

• Recording and processing for recording of video signals covered by the subject-matter in the range H04N 5/76 - H04N 5/907 is classified in said range irrespectively of said video signals being in colour or black and white.
• The range H04N 9/79 - H04N 9/898 deals with recording and processing for recording colour video signals while the corresponding range H04N 5/92 - H04N 5/956 deals with recording and processing for recording black and white video signals.
• H04N 9/79 (video recording) distinguishes itself from editing, which is found in G11B 27/00, in that the signals recorded and reproduced are video signals.
• H04N 9/79 is a function place for recording or processing for recording. H04N 21/433 describes applications for recording in a distribution system.
• H04N 9/79 features recording devices specially adapted to video data recording that can be programmed. The programming may be done by a user or a using an algorithm. Business methods where the video recording feature or step is well known is generally classified in G06Q 30/02.
• H04N 9/79 contains recording devices that are characterised by the connection to other devices through an interface. Typically information is sent or received by a recorder through an interface that impacts the recording or playback function. Interfaces in general are found in H04N 5/44.
• H04N 9/79 contains video cameras that record video data to a recording medium. Video cameras constructional details are found in H04N 5/225.
• H04N 9/79 is an application place for video data trick play. Reproducing data in general at a rate different from the recording rate is found in G11B 27/005.
• H04N 9/79 contains applications of video data processing for scrambling/encrypting video data for recording. Systems for rendering a video signal unintelligible are found in H04N 7/16 and H04N 21/00.
• H04N 9/79 is an application place for video data reduction for recording. Video data compression is found in H04N 19/00.

References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

| Video camera constructional details   | H04N 5/225 |
| Production of a video signal from a motion picture film | H04N 5/253 |
| Interfaces                              | H04N 5/44  |
| User interface of set top boxes         | H04N 5/44543 |
| Video data coding                       | H04N 19/00 |
| Network video distribution              | H04N 21/236 |
| Video data processing for printing      | G03F 1/00  |
| Video editing                           | G11B 27/034 |
| Recording techniques specially adapted to a recording medium for recording digital data in general | G11B 27/10 |
| Control of video recorders where the video signal is not substantially involved | G11B 31/00 |

Application-oriented references

Examples of places where the subject matter of this place is covered when specially adapted, used for a particular purpose, or incorporated in a larger system:

| Controlling video cameras:               | H04N 5/232 |
| Video surveillance:                     | H04N 7/18  |
| Selective content distribution          | H04N 21/00 |
| Alarm system using video cameras        | G08B 13/00 |

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Television signal processing in connection with recording, in general | H04N 5/91 |
| Systems for buying and selling, i.a. video content                     | G06Q 30/00 |
| Business methods related to the distribution of video data content     | G06Q 30/02 |

Special rules of classification

A document does not explicitly mention that the video signal is a monochrome video signal is to be interpreted as being a colour video signal. As a consequence some classes in H04N 5/76 specific to
monochrome signal recording have fallen out of use. Instead the corresponding colour symbols should be given to such documents.

Allocation of CPC symbols:

• A document containing invention information relating to video data recording will be given an H04N 9/79 CPC group.

• A document containing additional information relating to video data recording (in particular, if the document discloses a detailed video recording device) will be given a H04N 9/79 Indexing Code symbol.

• A document containing invention information for more than one invention it may be given more than one H04N 9/79 CPC group.

• A document merely mentioning recording will not be given an CPC group, but it may receive an Indexing Code if the disclosure is considered relevant.

• Allocation of Indexing Code symbols in combination with CPC:

• When assigning H04N 9/79 or a subclass thereof as CPC group, giving an additional Indexing Code is optional.

• Combined use of Indexing Code symbols:

• Indexing Code symbols maybe allocated as necessary to describe additional information in document.

• Symbol allocation rules:

• Documents defining recording devices that have an interface, e.g., connected to a network, should have at least one of the more specific H04N 5/765 Indexing Code symbols.

• Documents dealing with invention information about measures to prevent recording of projected images should be given the H04N 2005/91392 Indexing Code symbol.

Glossary of terms

In this place, the following terms or expressions are used with the meaning indicated:

| Video or video data | video signal analogue or digital with or without accompanying audio |

H04N 9/7925

{for more than one standard}

References

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Recording a plurality of video formats | H04N 9/7921 |
H04N 9/797
for recording the signal in a plurality of channels, the bandwidth of each channel being less than the bandwidth of the signal (H04N 9/804, H04N 9/81, H04N 9/82 take precedence)

References
Limiting references
This place does not cover:

| Transformation of the television signal for recording involving pulse code modulation of the colour picture signal components | H04N 9/804 |
| Transformation of the television signal for recording the individual colour picture signal components being recorded sequentially only | H04N 9/81 |
| Transformation of the television signal for recording the individual colour picture signal components being recorded simultaneously only | H04N 9/82 |

Informative references
Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Television signal processing for bandwidth reduction, by dividing samples or signal segments among a plurality of recording channels, in general | H04N 5/919 |

H04N 9/80
Transformation of the television signal for recording, e.g. modulation, frequency changing; Inverse transformation for playback

References
Informative references
Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Transformation of the television signal for recording, e.g. modulation, frequency changing, in general; Inverse transformation for playback, applicable to television systems in general | H04N 5/92 |
| Modulation | H03C |
| Demodulation or transference of modulation from one carrier to another | H03D |

H04N 9/804
involving pulse code modulation of the colour picture signal components

References
Informative references
Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Transformation of the television signal for recording by pulse code modulation, in general; Inverse transformation for playback thereof | H04N 5/926 |
**H04N 9/8042**

{involving data reduction}

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

Coding/decoding when done using an MPEG standard.

**H04N 9/8205**

{involving the multiplexing of an additional signal and the colour video signal}

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

Systems, where additional information, necessary to retrieve the video data, e.g., chapter marks, navigation packs, time stamps is recorded with the video information, either on the same recording medium or on an associated recording medium.

**H04N 9/87**

Regeneration of colour television signals *(H04N 9/80 takes precedence)*

**References**

**Limiting references**

*This place does not cover:*

Transformation of the television signal for recording, e.g. modulation, frequency changing; Inverse transformation for playback

**Informative references**

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

Regeneration of the television signal or of selected parts thereof, in general

**H04N 9/877**

by assembling picture element blocks in an intermediate memory

**References**

**Informative references**

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

Regeneration of the television signal or of selected parts thereof, by assembling picture element blocks in an intermediate store in general
H04N 9/88
Signal drop-out compensation

References
Informative references
Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Signal drop-out compensation, applicable to television systems in general | H04N 5/94 |

H04N 9/888
for signals recorded by pulse code modulation

References
Informative references
Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Signal drop-out compensation for signals recorded by pulse code modulation, applicable to television systems in general | H04N 5/945 |
| Error detection or correction of digital signals for recording in general | G11B 20/18 |

H04N 9/89
Time-base error compensation

References
Informative references
Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Time-base error compensation, applicable to television systems in general | H04N 5/95 |

H04N 9/893
using an analogue memory, e.g. a CCD shift register, the delay of which is controlled by a voltage controlled oscillator

References
Informative references
Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Time-base error compensation by using an analogue memory, e.g. a CCD-shift register, the delay of which is controlled by a voltage controlled oscillator, applicable to television systems in general | H04N 5/953 |
**H04N 9/898**

using frequency multiplication of the reproduced colour signal carrier with another auxiliary reproduced signal, e.g. a pilot signal carrier {(*H04N 9/83 takes precedence*)}

**References**

**Limiting references**

This place does not cover:

| Transformation of the television signal for recording, the recorded chrominance signal occupying a frequency band under the frequency band of the recorded brightness signal | H04N 9/83 |
|---|

**Informative references**

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Time-base error compensation by using an analogue memory, e.g. a CCD-shift register, the delay of which is controlled by a voltage controlled oscillator, applicable to television systems in general | H04N 5/956 |

**H04N 11/00**

**Colour television systems (details H04N 9/00)**

**Definition statement**

This place covers:

Hardware-related or software-related aspects specific to transmission of colour television signal, in particular for transmission of analog colour television signal (e.g. NTSC, PAL, SECAM)

**Relationships with other classification places**

**H04N 11/00** distinguishes itself from transmission systems using pulse code modulation with bandwidth reduction, wherein the chrominance component or any type of colour component is submitted to a processing equivalent to the processing of the luminance component, e.g. MPEG standards, which are found in **H04N 7/00, H04N 21/00**.

**References**

**Limiting references**

This place does not cover:

| Colour picture communication systems | H04N 1/46 |
| Details of colour television systems | H04N 9/00 |

**Informative references**

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| High-definition television systems | H04N 7/015 |
Special rules of classification

H04N 11/00 features a number of EC symbols corresponding to a same number of Indexing Codes (e.g., H04N 11/14 as EC symbol and H04N 11/14 as Indexing Code symbol)

Allocation of EC symbols and/or Indexing Code symbols:

A document containing invention information relating to colour television systems will be given a H04N 11/00 EC group

A document containing additional information relating to colour television systems will be given a H04N 11/00 EC group

A document merely mentioning details of colour television systems will not be given an EC group, but it may receive an Indexing Code if the disclosure is considered relevant.

H04N 11/02

with bandwidth reduction (H04N 11/04 {, H04N 11/24} take precedence)

References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Using pulse code modulation</th>
<th>H04N 11/04</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>High definition television systems</td>
<td>H04N 11/24</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Systems in which the television signal is transmitted via one channel or a plurality of parallel channels, the bandwidth of each channel being less than the bandwidth of the television signal, in general | H04N 7/12 |
| Methods or arrangements for coding, decoding, compressing or decompressing digital video signals | H04N 19/00 |

H04N 11/04

using pulse code modulation { (H04N 11/24 takes precedence) }

References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

| High definition television systems | H04N 11/24 |

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Systems for the transmission of television signals using pulse code modulation, in general | H04N 7/24 |
| Pulse code modulation in general | H03K, H03M |
Transmission systems using pulse code modulation, in general

**H04N 11/08**

using sequential signals only (dot sequential systems **H04N 11/12**)

**References**

**Limiting references**

This place does not cover:

Dot sequential systems

**H04N 11/20**

Conversion of the manner in which the individual colour picture signal components are combined, e.g. conversion of colour television standards

**References**

**Informative references**

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

Conversion of standards in television systems in general

**H04N 11/24**

High-definition television systems

**References**

**Informative references**

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

High-definition television systems in general

**H04N 13/00**

Stereoscopic video systems; Multi-view video systems; Details thereof

**Definition statement**

This place covers:

Systems that generate stereoscopic or multi-view signals from cameras, or provide stereoscopic or multi-view signals to displays. It also covers electronic signal processing aspects of such systems.

Examples:

- Stereoscopic and multi-view electronic image pick up devices (video cameras, digital still cameras)
- Stereoscopic and multi-view display devices
- Electronic signal processors
- for stereoscopic signal processing
- for monoscopic to stereoscopic conversion
• for stereoscopic image generation (including from a computer model)
• for stereoscopic displays (e.g. for left/right synchronization, stereoscopic format
• conversion or depth adaptation)
• for displays providing different 2D images to different viewers (e.g. for use in vehicles)
• for devices that generate a two-dimensional "look around" effect, e.g. non-stereoscopic multi-view
  systems (see however exclusions here below).
• Devices generating a real 3D image, i.e. an image having a volume (volumetric displays)
• Pseudo-stereoscopic systems

Systems in which the viewer’s eyes do not see different images, but which may provide a pseudo-
stereoscopic effect, are classified in H04N 13/00. The effect must go beyond that provided by the
mere display of a 3D object on a 2D screen (like in a CAD system).

Example: Wiggle stereoscopy: pseudo-stereo systems providing a three dimensional effect by means
of normal 2D image signals, by periodic oscillating motion of a 3D object.

Multi-view systems:
• Systems providing different 2D or 3D views of the same scene to one or more viewers according to
  the viewpoint location (called "look around" effect)
• Systems providing different 2D or 3D views of different scenes to different viewers (called "privacy"
  systems)

These systems are classified in H04N 13/00 if they provide said views simultaneously or at least at a
sufficiently high frame rate so as to be simultaneously viewed by the viewers.

However, multi-view systems wherein said 2D views are provided to a viewer one at a time, e.g.
by user selection, are not classified in H04N 13/00, because they are actually normal 2D systems
although the viewpoint can be selected at will.

Examples of multi-view devices falling under H04N 13/00:
• "look-around" display systems including displays in which a lenticular lens provides different views
  of a common scene from different viewing positions
• "privacy" display systems including displays in which a parallax barrier provides different views of
different scenes to different viewers in 2D or 3D (for example in a vehicle, wherein on a common
screen the driver is watching GPS while the passenger is watching a movie)
• Multi-user displays displaying different pictures for different viewers wearing shutter glasses to
select one of said pictures (this is also "privacy"), wherein said pictures are 2D or 3D pictures.

Relationships with other classification places
Subgroups under H04N 5/00 and H04N 7/00 relate to the basic monoscopic video aspects from which
corresponding stereoscopic aspects are derived.

Classification and search in these sections is therefore to be considered every time no specifically
stereoscopic aspects are present.

Analysis of video signals to perform real time control of a stereoscopic video cameras, or to identify
the image transmission format to drive a stereoscopic display, is classified in H04N 13/00.

Ordinary 2D displays arranged to display solid objects, e.g. in a CAD system, are sometimes called
3D displays. Such displays allow the viewer to rotate 3D objects to see them from any direction.
Such displays are not classified in H04N 13/00. This is because a viewer sees the same picture
with both eyes and because, if there is more than one viewer, all viewers see the same picture. The
manipulation of 3D models or images for computer graphics is covered by G06T 19/00.

Volumetric displays and holographic displays are not autostereoscopic displays for the purpose of this
classification
References

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Television cameras</th>
<th>H04N 5/225</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Arrangements of television cameras</td>
<td>H04N 5/247</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Projection displays</td>
<td>H04N 5/74, H04N 9/31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Video standard conversion</td>
<td>H04N 7/01</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colour signal processing circuits</td>
<td>H04N 9/64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Video stream synchronization / multiplexing /packetization aspects</td>
<td>H04N 21/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Video signal reformatting</td>
<td>H04N 21/4402, H04N 21/2343</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aspects concerning subtitles or other OSD information</td>
<td>H04N 21/488</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Generation or processing of metadata</td>
<td>H04N 21/84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optical systems</td>
<td>G02B 27/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stereoscopic photography</td>
<td>G03B 35/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Image processing or generation in general</td>
<td>G06T 7/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calculation or rendering of a monoscopic view of a 3D graphics object</td>
<td>G06T 15/20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Generation of 3D graphical models or scenes for digital data transmission as such</td>
<td>G06T 17/00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Glossary of terms

In this place, the following terms or expressions are used with the meaning indicated:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stereoscopic</th>
<th>Providing (exactly) two different views, one for the left eye and one for the right eye</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2D</td>
<td>Two dimensional</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3D</td>
<td>Three dimensional, sometimes also used to mean stereoscopic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Autostereoscopic display</td>
<td>A display device not requiring glasses to provide a stereoscopic effect to the viewer. A display device not requiring glasses to provide a stereoscopic effect to the viewer. An autostereoscopic display uses a parallax generating optic which projects or displays different images to the viewer, thus creating a sense of depth. The parallax-generating optic may include, for example, - parallax barriers - lenticular lenses - an array of controllable light sources or a moving aperture or light source - fly-eye lenses - dual and multilayer devices that are driven by algorithms to implement compressive light field displays; such devices are also called Content-Adaptive Parallax Barriers -varifocal lenses or mirrors. It is noted that volumetric displays and holographic displays are not autostereoscopic displays for the purpose of this classification.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multi-view</td>
<td>Providing more than two different views to one or more viewers according to their viewing position or direction; the views can be 2D or 3D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Automultiscopic display</td>
<td>This is a shorter synonym for the expression &quot;multi-view autostereoscopic 3D display&quot;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Volumetric display | A device generating a "solid" image, i.e. not an image on the surface of a display, but one having a real depth, for example by projecting 2D image slices at different planes within a viewing volume. Such systems have been considered to fall within the definition of stereoscopic systems because the viewer's eyes perceive two different pictures.

Lenticular lens | An array of thin cylindrical lenslets (normally less than 1mm wide) placed vertically in front of, or behind a display or light modulator in order to generate optically directive views in

Parallax barrier | An array of opaque strips and thin slits arranged to occlude portions of a displayed image in left and right viewing regions. The slits are spatially arranged to ensure that the left/right image portions are only visible in the corresponding left/right viewing regions for which they are intended. The parallax barrier may be provided by a static physical layer in which the slits are precisely positioned, or electronically generated on an adaptive intermediate LCD layer. The parallax barrier may also be adjacent to camera circuitry for image collection.

Fly-eye lens | An array of very small bidimensional lenses (typically circular / hemispherical) placed in front of a display, light modulator or image sensor like a normal lenticular lens, providing bidimensional parallax

Pseudo-stereoscopic | Relating to stereoscopic or 3D visual effects obtained without sending different views to the viewer's eyes. The same term is sometimes used to denote the effect whereby the left and right images are seen by the wrong eyes, due to viewing from an unsuitable position in front of an auto-stereoscopic display.

Integral imaging | A technique of image capture or display which uses a fly's eye or a lenticular lens in front of the image sensor/display in order to capture/display images with parallax

Plenoptic camera | A camera, normally non-stereoscopic, using a technique allowing focusing after image capture, by means of a lenticular lens array combined with a plurality of (small) image sensors. A plenoptic camera is also known as a light-field camera.

**Synonyms and Keywords**

In patent documents, the following abbreviations are often used:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>LCD</td>
<td>Liquid Crystal Display</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SLM</td>
<td>Spatial Light Modulator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OSD</td>
<td>On-Screen Display</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CAD</td>
<td>Computer Aided Design</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In patent documents, the following words/expressions are often used as synonyms:

In patent documents "3D"and "stereoscopic" are sometimes used as synonyms:

In patent documents the terms "automultiscopic" and "multi-view autostereoscopic" are sometimes used as synonyms.

The terms "lenticular screen", "lenticular lens array" and "lenticular array" are used as synonyms.
The terms "plenoptic camera" and "light-field camera" are used as synonyms.

H04N 13/10

Processing, recording or transmission of stereoscopic or multi-view image signals

Definition statement
This place covers:
Device-independent processing of stereoscopic or multi-view image signals

H04N 13/106

Processing image signals (for multi-view video sequence encoding
H04N 19/597)

References

Limiting references
This place does not cover:

Multi-view video sequence encoding H04N 19/597

H04N 13/111

Transformation of image signals corresponding to virtual viewpoints, e.g. spatial image interpolation

Special rules of classification

Attention should be paid to the word "transformation": here a new virtual image is generated starting from one or more already existing stereoscopic images, e.g. by interpolation. In contrast new computer-generated stereoscopic images not derived from existing images are classified in H04N 13/275.

H04N 13/122

Improving the 3D impression of stereoscopic images by modifying image signal contents, e.g. by filtering or adding monoscopic depth cues (H04N 13/128 takes precedence)

Definition statement

This place covers:
Modification of image signals to enhance the viewer's perception of the 3D effect. Such modification may include:
- Addition of depth cues such as defocusing, colouring, shadows
- Geometric correction or warping
- Left/right or temporal crosstalk reduction

Relationships with other classification places

If the content is not modified, this group is not relevant.
If the 3D impression is improved by horizontally shifting one of the images with respect to the other, or by modifying the depth map, then the document should be classified in H04N 13/128.

References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

| Adjusting depth or disparity | H04N 13/128 |

**H04N 13/128**

Adjusting depth or disparity

**Definition statement**

This place covers:

Depth adjustment, e.g.:

- Control of disparity between L and R images
- Processing of depth maps
- Non-linear processing of depth in order to adapt it to display features such as screen size

**Relationships with other classification places**

Reduction of depth parameters to reduce eye strain (fatigue) caused by flicker should be classified here and in H04N 13/144, providing the depth parameters are controlled by the image signal and not by the display parameters.

If depth adjustment is obtained by acting only on device parameters, i.e. there is no stereoscopic image signal processing, the document should not be classified here but only in the relevant device groups, H04N 13/20 and H04N 13/30.

For example, if depth is adjusted by controlling the baseline (the physical distance between two cameras of a stereo camera), the adjustment should be classified in H04N 13/239 in combination with H04N 13/296.

**H04N 13/139**

Format conversion, e.g. of frame-rate or size

**Definition statement**

This place covers:

Conversion of any kind of stereoscopic format into another one, e.g. from side-by-side to top-bottom or "2D+depth", or still to side-by-side but with a different size, resolution or frame rate

**Relationships with other classification places**

The generation of stereoscopic signals from monoscopic source signals is classified in H04N 13/261 or in relevant groups under H04N 13/20. Format conversion should be classified here only if it concerns stereoscopic (or multi-view) signals and if the conversion goes beyond the equivalent processing of monoscopic image signals.

Standards conversion of monoscopic TV signals (e.g. PAL to NTSC), or the adaptation of signals to the display format of a display terminal, should be classified in H04N 7/01.
**H04N 13/156**

*Mixing image signals*

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

The generation of stereoscopic (or multi-view) images from at least two source images, wherein the contents of both source images remain visible in the resultant mixed image, i.e. the generation of one image including the weighted sum of said two source images.

**Relationships with other classification places**

The reproduction of mixed stereoscopic images or mixed monoscopic and stereoscopic images, e.g. a stereoscopic image overlay on a monoscopic image background, is classified in H04N 13/361.

Overlays such as subtitles and similar graphic images are to be classified in H04N 13/183.

**References**

*Informative references*

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Mixing monoscopic television image signals | H04N 5/265 |

**H04N 13/161**

*Encoding, multiplexing or demultiplexing different image signal components (for multi-view video sequence encoding H04N 19/597)*

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

- Aspects of manipulating the structure of the stereoscopic video signal, i.e. how the different image signals which constitute a stereoscopic (or multi-view) image signal are encoded or combined in order to form a complete video signal, e.g. for storage or transmission.
- The separation of stereoscopic or multi-view image signals into their respective constituent (e.g. left and right) components.

"Multiplexing" and "demultiplexing" are to be interpreted in the general sense mentioned above, i.e. any manner of forming a stereoscopic image frame, stream or signal from e.g.

- left and right signals
- a 2D image and a depth image by arranging the components in a format having e.g.
  - alternate L/R frames or fields
  - side by side L/R images
  - top/down L/R images
- main layer / enhancement layer
- component images having different resolutions

**Relationships with other classification places**

Aspects relating to the general encoding of stereoscopic or multi-view image signals are classified here. Prediction encoding to compress the image signal (e.g. using temporal or spatial prediction techniques) specially adapted for multi-view video sequences is classified in H04N 19/597.
Further, attention should be paid to the term "image signal components" which is used in a strict sense. Non-image signal components are to be classified in H04N 13/172 and subgroups thereof.

References

Limiting references
This place does not cover:

| Prediction encoding specially adapted for multi-view video sequences | H04N 19/597 |

H04N 13/178
Metadata, e.g. disparity information

Definition statement
This place covers:
Metadata concerning stereoscopic features included in a stereoscopic video stream or image file

H04N 13/183
On-screen display [OSD] information, e.g. subtitles or menus

Definition statement
This place covers:
Details relating to subtitles or other OSD information, which are included in a stereoscopic video stream separate from the image(s), e.g. information describing how to merge subtitles with the main image, or how to avoid depth conflicts, depth interference etc.

H04N 13/189
Recording image signals; Reproducing recorded image signals

Relationships with other classification places
This group is used to classify aspects concerning the recording of stereoscopic or multi-view image signals and the reproduction thereof. Recording of monoscopic video signals and monoscopic aspects of stereoscopic video signals is classified in H04N 5/76.

H04N 13/194
Transmission of image signals

Relationships with other classification places
This group is used to classify aspects relating to the transmission of stereoscopic or multi-view image signals. Such aspects are often quite close to the corresponding monoscopic ones, because once a stereoscopic video stream has been assembled, it is generally recorded or transmitted with monoscopic techniques. Transmission of monoscopic image signals is classified elsewhere in H04N, e.g. H04N 5/38, H04N 21/00 (for selective content distribution systems).
H04N 13/20
Image signal generators

Definition statement

This place covers:
• The generation of electronic image signals representative of stereoscopic or multi-view images
• Computer-generated stereoscopic or multi-view image signals;
• Signal processing and control systems therefor.

Note:
The generated stereoscopic signals may be in any format, e.g. L + R, 2D + depth map, 3D + depth map. Note however that the devices which do not capture optical images (e.g. 3D scanners, time-of-flight cameras, rangefinders etc.) are not classified in H04N 13/00: they are classified in the groups indicated here below.

Relationships with other classification places

Monoscopic plenoptic cameras generating a single viewpoint are classified in the relevant groups H04N 5/225.

Plenoptic cameras / integral imaging cameras, which provide more than one viewpoint, are to be classified in H04N 13/20, in particular in H04N 13/282 if they provide more than two different geometrical viewpoints.

References

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Time-of-flight [TOF] cameras                        | G01S 17/08 |
| Optical systems for producing stereoscopic or other three dimensional effects | G02B 30/00 |
| Stereoscopic photography by sequential recording  | G03B 35/02 |
| Stereoscopic photography by simultaneously recording | G03B 35/08 |
| 3D scanners                                          | G06F 3/01 |
| Depth or shape recovery                              | G06T 7/50  |
| Generation of a depth map from stereoscopic image signals | G06T 7/593 |
| Calculation or rendering of a monoscopic view of a 3D graphics object | G06T 15/20 |
| Generation of 3D graphical models or scenes         | G06T 17/00 |
| Manipulating 3D models or images for computer graphics | G06T 19/00 |
| Television cameras                                  | H04N 5/225 |
| Arrangements of television cameras (not for capturing stereoscopic images) | H04N 5/247 |
| Projection displays                                 | H04N 5/74, H04N 9/31 |
| Recording, including multiplexing another television signal | H04N 5/92, H04N 9/82 |
| Video standards conversion                          | H04N 7/01  |
| Colour signal processing circuits                   | H04N 9/64  |
| Video stream synchronization / multiplexing / packetization aspects | H04N 21/00 |
Video signal reformatting
Aspects concerning subtitles or other OSD information
Generation or processing of metadata

**H04N 13/211**

using temporal multiplexing

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

Alternate acquisition of images from different viewpoints, each image acquired at a different time

**H04N 13/214**

using spectral multiplexing

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

Simultaneously capturing images from several geometrical viewpoints, each image having different spectral characteristics

**H04N 13/218**

using spatial multiplexing

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

Simultaneously capturing images from several geometrical viewpoints on different parts of the image pickup sensor

**H04N 13/232**

using fly-eye lenses, e.g. arrangements of circular lenses

**Special rules of classification**

Plenoptic cameras, i.e. lens array cameras for providing stereoscopic or 3D images, are classified here even if each lens of the fly-eye lens is placed on a different chip (the image sensor is considered to be one even if it is composite)

**H04N 13/239**

using two 2D image sensors having a relative position equal to or related to the interocular distance (*H04N 13/243* takes precedence)

**References**

**Limiting references**

*This place does not cover:*

using three or more 2D image sensors

---

137
H04N 13/246

Calibration of cameras

Definition statement

This place covers:

Aspects relating to the control of a stereoscopic camera in order to obtain aligned images, i.e. images that only differ by a horizontal disparity, but that have no relative rotation, or other geometric distortion, there between.

Relationships with other classification places

The so-called stereo (camera) calibration aspects wherein an already captured image pair is processed to determine and compensate the same above mentioned distortions are to be classified in G06T 7/80 such aspects differing from the aspects classified in this group in that they do not "relate to the control of a stereoscopic camera".

H04N 13/254

in combination with electromagnetic radiation sources for illuminating objects

Definition statement

This place covers:

Aspects relating to the use of light for obtaining a stereoscopic, e.g. illumination with structured light in order to capture depth, or illumination from different sides or with different colours to obtain left and right images.

Relationships with other classification places

Normal illumination devices (flash or continuous illumination) are classified in H04N 5/225 and if exposure aspects are involved, in H04N 5/235. If structured illumination is used for measuring contours or curvatures, see G01B 11/25.

References

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Laser ranging using the projection of structured light to facilitate image analysis for depth or shape recovery | G06T 7/521 |

H04N 13/261

with monoscopic-to-stereoscopic image conversion

Definition statement

This place covers:

Devices obtaining a stereoscopic image from one or more existing monoscopic image

Relationships with other classification places

In this group the capturing conditions of the monoscopic images are unknown or irrelevant, whereas in H04N 13/207 and subgroups stereoscopic images are generated from a camera controlled to provide images of different viewpoints, so that no "conversion" is necessary.
H04N 13/275
from 3D object models, e.g. computer-generated stereoscopic image signals

Definition statement

This place covers:
Systems using a computer for generating a stereoscopic image, e.g. a fully synthetic stereoscopic image from a CAD-type 3D object model

Relationships with other classification places

The generation of a new image from a virtual viewpoint from existing stereoscopic images is covered in H04N 13/111 and its subgroup.

H04N 13/30

Image reproducers (optical systems for producing stereoscopic or other threedimensional effects G02B 30/00)

Definition statement

This place covers:
• Devices for stereoscopic or multi-view electronic image signal display.
• Devices for electronic image signal display for generating different views of a scene according to the viewpoint location.
• Devices for electronic image signal display for generating different views for different viewers.
• Devices for electronic image signal display for generating a view visible only by a specific viewer.
• Devices for volumetric three dimensional electronic image signal display.
• Devices for pseudo-stereoscopic display systems. For example: wiggle stereoscopy or pseudo-stereo systems providing a three-dimensional effect by means of normal 2D image signals, by periodic oscillating motion of a 3D object.
• Devices which generate different two-dimensional views in the vertical direction by using horizontally arranged parallax optic and displaying different images in the vertical direction.
• Electronic signal processing and control therefor. For example signal processors and controllers.
• for left/right synchronization, stereoscopic format conversion or depth adaptation
• for backlight control or electrical control of properties of a lenticular lens
• for providing different 2D images to different viewers (e.g. for use in vehicles)
• for devices which generate a two-dimensional "look around" effect, e.g. non-stereoscopic multi-view systems, when the user's position is tracked or when different images are displayed in the vertical direction on a display using a horizontally arranged parallax optic
• for controlling image flipping (or inverse image), caused by the noticeable transition between the viewing zones
• for controlling picket fence effect, a moiré-like artefact caused by the gaps between sub-pixels being magnified by the lenticular sheet, for example by use of a slanted parallax optic. (Blurring the boundaries between the viewing zones can increase the apparent number of views, broadening the observation angle of the pixels)
• for reducing of ghosting or crosstalk
• for controlling resolution loss of images with high perceived depth, for example by controlling the distance between the pixels and the array of lenticular lens elements,
• for controlling the stereoscopic image generation in dependence on the user position and orientation
• for controlling the stereoscopic image generation in dependence on the display position and orientation
• Constructional arrangements and manufacturing methods for stereoscopic display devices for example details related to:
  • colour pixel arrangement with respect to the parallax optic layout or shape of pixels
  • mechanical control of position of the parallax optic user interfaces for controlling or indicating the stereoscopic image display properties, like amount of displayed depth or switching between 2D/3D mode
  • arrangements for improving the stereoscopic impression, e.g. by using an additional frame placed in front of the screen

References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

Optical systems for producing stereoscopic or other three dimensional effects

G02B 30/00

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

Holographic volumetric displays

G03H 1/26

Synonyms and Keywords

In patent documents, the following words/expressions are often used as synonyms:

In patent documents, the expression "multi-view display" is often used as synonym for describing "privacy" displays, for example, multi-user displays displaying different pictures for different viewers wearing shutter glasses to select one of said pictures (this is also "privacy"), wherein said pictures may be 2D or 3D pictures. Such type of privacy displays are not multi-view displays for the purpose of this classification. However, these privacy display devices (which, for example, use an image separation optic, e.g. a parallax optic, a shutter or polarisation glasses for generating privacy images for a specific viewer) also fall under H04N 13/30.

In patent documents, the expression "Three dimensional (3D)" is often used with the meaning "stereoscopic". However, this expression has a broader meaning and encompasses for instance 2D images displayed with monoscopic depth cues, computer generated (CG) 3D models or stack of images arranged in depth direction (e.g. tomographic images).

H04N 13/302

for viewing without the aid of special glasses, i.e. using autostereoscopic displays

Definition statement

This place covers:

Electronic signal processors and controllers specially adapted for driving and controlling of autostereoscopic displays, automultiscopic displays, integral imaging displays or privacy displays using a parallax generating optic which projects or displays different images to the left and right eyes, thus creating a sense of depth. The parallax generating optic may include:
  • parallax barriers
  • lenticular lenses
  • an array of controllable light sources or a moving aperture or light source
  • a fly-eye lens
• dual and multilayer devices that are driven by algorithms such as computed tomography and non-negative matrix factorization and non-negative tensor factorization to implement compressive light field displays; such devices are also called Content-Adaptive Parallax Barriers
• a varifocal lens or mirror.
• Constructional arrangements and manufacturing methods for autostereoscopic displays, automultiscopic displays, integral imaging displays or privacy displays, for example, details related to the colour pixel arrangement with respect to the parallax barrier, layout or shape of pixels or mechanical control of position of the lenticular lens.

Illustrative examples

(Autostereoscopic displays showing dependence on the user position - blended zones where the left and right images are seen with both eyes, inverse image zone where the left image is seen by the right eye)

Relationships with other classification places

Volumetric displays and holographic displays are not autostereoscopic displays for the purpose of this group. Examples of relevant classification places for volumetric and holographic displays can be found under the informative references below.

References

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Constructional details related to television receivers;</th>
<th>H04N 5/64</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Volumetric display, i.e. systems where the image is built up from picture elements distributed over a volume</td>
<td>H04N 13/388</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Devices or arrangements for the control of the intensity, colour, phase, polarisation or direction of light arriving from an independent light source, e.g. switching, gating, or modulating; Non-linear optics</td>
<td>G02F 1/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Structural association of optical devices, e.g. polarisers, reflectors or illuminating devices, with the cell</td>
<td>G02F 1/335</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stereoscopic photography by sequential viewing</td>
<td>G03B 35/16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stereoscopic photography by simultaneous viewing</td>
<td>G03B 35/18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stereoscopic photography by simultaneous viewing using aperture or refractive resolving means on screen or between screen and eye</td>
<td>G03B 35/24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Holographic processes or apparatus using light, infra-red or ultra-violet waves for obtaining holograms or for obtaining an image from them</td>
<td>G03H 1/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Constructional details related to the housing of computer displays</td>
<td>G06F 1/16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Advertising or display means</td>
<td>G09F 19/00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
displaying different signs depending upon the viewpoint of the observer

involving the use of mirrors

Control arrangements or circuits to produce spatial visual effects, for example rotating displays;

**Special rules of classification**

The present group should be assigned when no explicit reference to the particular type of the autostereoscopic display device is disclosed and when the autostereoscopic display device is not defined in the subgroups.

(Autostereoscopic displays using an array forming a moving aperture (120) and lenticular lens (110) placed behind the display should be classified in H04N 13/305 in combination with H04N 13/32)
H04N 13/302 (continued)

(Autostereoscopic displays using an array of controllable light sources and lenticular lenses placed in front of and behind the display should be classified in H04N 13/305 in combination with H04N 13/32)

**H04N 13/305**

**using lenticular lenses, e.g. arrangements of cylindrical lenses**

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

Electronic signal processors and controllers specially adapted for driving and controlling of autostereoscopic displays using lenticular lenses, as well as constructional arrangements and manufacturing methods for such autostereoscopic display devices.

Autostereoscopic displays using lenticular lenses are not limited to the cases where the lenticular lenses are arranged in front of the display only.

Illustrative examples

(Autostereoscopic displays using lenticular lenses placed in front of the display)

![3D mode](image1.png)

![2D mode](image2.png)

*Fig. 2 Principle of active lenticular lens*
(Electrical control of properties of the lenticular lens)

(In the first mode, the light output directing function is provided by an array 35 that is closer to the display panel 33. This mode provides a limited amount of perceived depth, but high resolution, and is therefore suitable for use in a "monitor" application where high resolution is more important. In the second mode, the light output directing function is provided by an array 37 that is further from the display panel 33.)

**Special rules of classification**

The present group should be assigned in combination with other groups of H04N 13/00 for example:

| a lenticular lens is used in combination with a moving aperture or controllable light sources | H04N 13/32 |
| when the lenticular lens is used in combination with a parallax barrier | H04N 13/31 |
| when the lenticular lens is slanted | H04N 13/317 |
| when the autostereoscopic display is for multi-view display | H04N 13/349 |
| when the user is tracked | H04N 13/366 |

**Synonyms and Keywords**

In patent documents, the following words/expressions are often used as synonyms:

In patent documents, the expressions "lenticular" and "lens array" are often used as synonyms, although these terms may also be used for fly-eye lens arrays.

**H04N 13/307**

using fly-eye lenses, e.g. arrangements of circular lenses

**Definition statement**

This place covers:

Volumetric or integral imaging displays that use a fly-eye lens array

Integral imaging systems consisting of a two-dimensional (2D) lens array and display system. An elemental image on a 2D panel gives a different perspective to each elemental lens, as shown in the
The lens array integrates the elemental images to form a 3D image with full parallax (horizontal and vertical) and an almost continuous view.

(A display comprises a pixel array (104) and an optical element array (102) disposed in close proximity to the pixel array. The pixel array is operated to display two or more images. The optical element array is configured and operated to direct each image to an associated viewing position, enabling a viewer to separately view each image from the respective associated viewing position.)

(A naked eye stereoscopic display includes a plurality of projectors (1), a microlens array (2) for collecting light beams of an image projected from the projectors, and a diffuser panel for diffusing the...
light beams collected by the microlens array. Furthermore, the diffuser panel is arranged such that a virtual light collection point is formed among a plurality of light collection points of light beams by a plurality of microlenses constituting the microlens array.

**Special rules of classification**

The present group is the only group where integral imaging displays are classified.

**Synonyms and Keywords**

*In patent documents, the following words/expressions are often used as synonyms:*

In patent documents, the expressions "microlens array", "lens array" and "fly-eye lens array" are often used as synonyms.

**H04N 13/31**

using parallax barriers

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

Autostereoscopic displays which use parallax barriers. A parallax barrier is a device placed in front of or behind an image source, such as a liquid crystal display, to allow it to show a stereoscopic image or multiscopic image without the need for the viewer to wear 3D glasses.

(A display panel 10 and a parallax barrier 20)

**Special rules of classification**

This group should always be assigned when the parallax barrier is a device placed in front of the image source.

This group should be assigned in combination with other groups of **H04N 13/30** for example:

| a parallax barrier is used in combination with a moving aperture or controllable light sources | H04N 13/32 |
| when the user is tracked | H04N 13/366 |
H04N 13/312

the parallax barriers being placed behind the display panel, e.g. between backlight and spatial light modulator [SLM]

Definition statement

This place covers:

Autostereoscopic displays which use a parallax barrier behind an image source. If the parallax barrier is placed behind the LCD pixels, the light from a slit passes the left image pixel in the left direction, and vice versa. This produces the same basic effect as a front parallax barrier. In both cases the image displayed is column interlaced.

(The parallax barrier slit is visible at the same horizontal position within each pixel (R pixel, L pixel) of one view (R, L)).

(Figure 1 shows two images displayed on the display layer 4, with the two images displayed on alternate columns of pixels; one image is displayed on pixel columns C1, C3, C5 and a second image...
is displayed on pixel columns C2, C4, C6. The image display device is illuminated by light 7 from a light source.)

**Special rules of classification**

This group should be assigned always when the parallax barrier is placed behind the image source.

Optical masks which form part of a controllable light source should not be classified in the group, but in H04N 13/32.

**H04N 13/317**

**using slanted parallax optics**

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*
- Autostereoscopic displays where the parallax optic, for example a lenticular lens or parallax barrier is slanted with respect to the pixels matrix of the SLM.
- Autostereoscopic displays where the pixels or the pixel matrix is slanted with respect to the parallax optics.

In 1996, van Berkel proposed that the lenticular sheet could be placed at a slant over a standard LCD screen. This approach removes the picket fence effect, creates smooth transition between the views and at the same time balances the horizontal vs. vertical resolution of a view. Another solution with similar effects is called "wavelength-selective filter array". Essentially, the filter is a slanted parallax barrier which covers the display and defines particular light penetration direction of each sub-pixel.

**Illustrative examples**
(A display panel (10) which includes a plurality of pixels (21) arranged in a plurality of sub-pixels and displays an image frame; a viewing area separating unit (120) arranged in front of the display panel)

(The display system 100 comprises a pixel array 102 and lenses 106 disposed over the pixel array 102. In an embodiment, pixel array 102 may include pixels 104 that are slanted relative to the lenses 106.)

**Special rules of classification**

The present group should be assigned in combination with other groups of H04N 13/30, for example:

| Colour aspects of stereoscopic or multi-view image producers, e.g. for control or arrangement of colour sub-pixels | H04N 13/324 |

**H04N 13/32**

using arrays of controllable light sources; using moving apertures or moving light sources

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

- Autostereoscopic displays using controllable light sources or arrangements, adjustment of which directs the light in different directions, so as to direct a displayed image (or portion thereof) toward a viewer’s eye.
- Autostereoscopic displays in which the direction of the displayed image is manipulated by movement of apertures, by movement of light sources or by using optical masks that form part of a controllable light source.
Illustrative example

(The backlight module (1) comprises a first light guide plate (21) and a second light guide plate (22) which are stacked, and comprises a first light source (11) disposed opposite to the first light guide plate (21), and a second light source (12) disposed opposite to the second light guide plate (22).)

Relationships with other classification places

Illumination arrangements using parallax barriers are classified in this group and not in H04N 13/312.

References

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Light guides | G02B 6/00 |

Special rules of classification

Backlight modules commonly comprise lenticular lenses or parallax barriers. In such cases the present group should be assigned in combination with:

| using a lenticular lens | H04N 13/305 |
| using a parallax barrier | H04N 13/31 |

In these examples the lenticular lenses or parallax barriers are part of the backlight modules:
(Fig. 2 and 4 show 3D display systems that use a lenticular lens 22 or a parallax barrier 26, along with a shutter plate, as a light directing device to allow a viewer’s right eye to see a right image and the left eye to see a left image on a display panel. The right and left images are alternately displayed.

Although the parallax barrier 26 is placed behind the SLM 10, the H04N 13/312 shall not be allocated, since it is a part of the illumination arrangement.)

**H04N 13/322**

**using varifocal lenses or mirrors**

**Relationships with other classification places**

Volumetric display systems where the image is built up from picture elements distributed over a volume are classified in H04N 13/388.

**H04N 13/327**

**Calibration thereof**

**Definition statement**

This place covers:

- Colour or brightness adjustment with respect to the stereoscopic images when considering specific optical and constructional properties of a specific stereoscopic type display
- Geometric correction of stereoscopic images with respect to errors arising from the relative positions between the different optical elements, such as the pixels and the parallax optic;
- Mechanical or electrical change of properties or position of optical elements, such as the lenticular screen, to compensate for misalignments between the optical elements.

Calibration can be performed automatically or by the user when viewing a predetermined calibration or test image.

**References**

**Informative references**

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Improving the 3D impression of a stereoscopic image by modifying image signal contents | H04N 13/122 |
| Equalising the characteristics of different image components in stereoscopic images, e.g. colour balance | H04N 13/133 |
Special rules of classification

This group should be always assigned in combination with a respective display type. For example, calibration of autostereoscopic displays should be classified in both H04N 13/302 and H04N 13/327.

H04N 13/334

using spectral multiplexing

Definition statement

This place covers:

• Stereoscopic displays using an anaglyph display method, e.g. by displaying the image for each eye using filters of different (usually chromatically opposite) colours, typically red and cyan. When viewed through “anaglyph glasses”, wherein each lens comprises a corresponding colour filter, an integrated stereoscopic image is perceived by the viewer.

• Stereoscopic displays using a full colour anaglyph display method, in which different images represented by triplets of slightly different primary colours (e.g. RLGLBL and RRGRBR) are presented to the left and right eyes respectively and viewed through glasses with selective filters. This technique may also be referred to as ‘wavelength multiplex visualization’.

• Stereoscopic displays using Pulfrich display method obtained from a light/dark filter arrangement.

An example of spectral multiplexing comprises simultaneously displaying left and right images separated by using glasses with different spectral characteristics.

In the example, the dotted lines represent the wavelengths seen by the left eye and the continuous lines represent those seen by the right eye. The left eye sees RGB image components of slightly different wavelengths than those seen by the right eye. When provided with the correct set of filters, e.g. Fabry-Perot filters, which let through light within limited, chosen ranges of wavelengths, the viewer will perceive a full colour stereoscopic image.

References

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Stereoscopic photography by simultaneous viewing using polarised or coloured light for separating different viewpoint images | G03B 35/26 |
**H04N 13/337**

**using polarisation multiplexing**

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

- Display systems which display stereoscopic images simultaneously or sequentially, each image presented by light of a different polarisation. Such systems conventionally require passive glasses having different polarising characteristics for each eye.
- Display systems which display different images simultaneously or sequentially for different viewers wearing glasses having differing polarising characteristics. Viewers wearing differently polarised glasses see different displayed images (e.g. "privacy" displays).

An example of using polarisation multiplexing comprises simultaneously displaying left and right images which are separated by using glasses with different polarising characteristics.
(Odd pixel lines (running horizontally) are rotated clockwise, and even pixels line counter-clockwise, using circular polarisation. Viewing glasses make it possible for the right eye to see only the odd lines, and the left only the even lines, again using polarising films, producing the 3D image.)

References

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Stereoscopic photography by simultaneous viewing using polarised or coloured light for separating different viewpoint images | G03B 35/26 |

Special rules of classification

This group should not be assigned for shutter type displays which use polarisers in the glasses as part of the shutter system for completely blocking the light, but H04N 13/385.

However, this group should be assigned in combination with H04N 13/341 for cases when both eyes see an image, if polarisation alternating glasses are used.

H04N 13/339

using spatial multiplexing (H04N 13/337 takes precedence)

Definition statement

This place covers:

Formation of a stereoscopic image by simultaneously displaying left and right images on different parts of a display and using glasses to optically recombine the stereoscopic image, e.g. with prisms or mirrors

References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

| Stereoscopic displays using polarisation multiplexing, for simultaneously displaying left and right images | H04N 13/337 |
H04N 13/341
using temporal multiplexing

Definition statement

This place covers:

- Formation of a stereoscopic image by alternately displaying left and right images separated in time and by using glasses, e.g. with shutters, alternately to block the right and left eye
- Shutter type display systems using a frame sequential method of displaying 3D images. Full high-definition (HD) images are alternated between left and right eyes each frame, using glasses with synchronised liquid crystal shutters alternately to block left and right eye vision.
- Frame sequential methods of displaying 3D images when the optical properties, such as colour filtering or polarisation characteristics, of each lens of the shutter glasses are alternated with each frame, i.e. active glasses
- Shutter type display systems using frame sequential method of displaying different pictures for different viewers wearing shutter glasses to select one of said pictures ("privacy"), wherein said pictures are 2D or 3D pictures

(Timing diagrams showing synchronization between the LCD panel, the LED backlight and the Glasses of Shutter type stereoscopic displays)

References

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Frame sequential stereoscopic displays using passive glasses | H04N 13/337, H04N 13/334 |
H04N 13/344

with head-mounted left-right displays

Definition statement

This place covers:
• head-mounted displays for stereoscopic viewing
• head-mounted displays specially adapted for augmented reality systems
• head-mounted displays comprising viewer tracking for generating look around images

(The head-mounted display 100 illustrated has display panels 104L and 104R for the left eye and the right eye at a side surface facing a face of a user.)

References

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Optical head-up displays</th>
<th>G02B 27/01</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Manipulating 3D images for computer graphics, e.g. for virtual reality (VR) or augmented reality (AR) display</td>
<td>G06T 19/00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Special rules of classification

This group maybe assigned in combination with several further groups if the head mounted display is used for example in augmented or mixed reality systems or if the user position is tracked. For example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stereo video generation from a 3D object model, e.g. computer-generated stereoscopic image signals</th>
<th>H04N 13/275</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mixing stereoscopic image signals</td>
<td>H04N 13/156</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**H04N 13/346**

using prisms or semi-transparent mirrors

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

- 3D display arrangements which use a semi-transparent mirror or prism for optically mixing or separating left and right images.

**Special rules of classification**

This group should normally be assigned in combination with a respective display type, for example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Volumetric display with depth sampling</th>
<th>H04N 13/395</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>stereoscopic displaying with polarisation multiplexing, for simultaneously displaying left and right images</td>
<td>H04N 13/337</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**H04N 13/349**

Multi-view displays for displaying three or more geometrical viewpoints without viewer tracking (for viewing without the aid of special glasses using fly-eye lenses **H04N 13/307**)

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

- Multi-view displays which simultaneously or sequentially display multiple (three or more) viewpoints (perspectives or views) of the same scene in different directions (zones, lobes, cones) with respect to the optical axis of the display in order to generate a look-around effect (motion parallax) when the user moves around the display. The viewpoints (views) are displayed irrespective of whether the viewer is tracked or not.
- Multi-view displays which simultaneously or sequentially display multiple (three or more) viewpoints of different scenes in different directions (zones, lobes, cones), for example for privacy displays. The viewpoints (views) are displayed irrespective of whether the viewer is tracked or not.
- Multi-view displays that display three or more viewpoints (perspectives or views of one or more scene) in different directions (zones, lobes, cones) with respect to the optical axis of the display.

**References**

*Limiting references*

*This place does not cover:*

- Autostereoscopic displays using fly-eye lenses **H04N 13/307**

*Informative references*

*Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:*

- Volumetric displays **H04N 13/388**
Special rules of classification

This group should normally be assigned in combination with a respective display type, which is normally of autostereoscopic type.

The definition “without viewer tracking” does not mean that such display systems do not include viewer tracking. Some displays can include viewer tracking, e.g. for preventing image flipping.

The term “multi-view” is also used for privacy display devices which display different video content to different viewers. Such displays however are not necessarily multi-view displays if they cannot generate multiple (three or more) viewpoints and cones irrespective of whether the viewer is tracked or not. For example, one type of privacy displays (similar to an autostereoscopic display) displays (only) two different views in two different directions. Such a privacy display does not fall into the above definition for Multi-view displays and should be not classified in H04N 13/349.

The generation of multiple viewpoints (look around or motion parallax effect) of a scene according to the viewer position is classified in H04N 13/117 or H04N 13/279. The displaying of such viewpoints on a display to simulate a look around effect does not mean that the display is multi-view. Therefore, such stereoscopic systems should be not classified in H04N 13/349 if they do not comprise a multi-view display as defined above.
H04N 13/354
for displaying sequentially

Definition statement
This place covers:
Sequential display of different images for different viewpoints at different time intervals. By controlling the display with a sufficiently high frame rate, viewers at different viewpoints will see different content, depending upon their position.

(A first lens structure LS1 emits two viewpoint images displayed on the display panel 200 to viewpoint positions VW1, VW2, during the first interval of the frame. Then, the second lens structure LS2 emits two viewpoint images displayed on the display panel 200 to viewpoint positions VW3, VW4, during the second interval of the frame.)

H04N 13/356
having separate monoscopic and stereoscopic modes

Definition statement
This place covers:
Stereoscopic displays that are selectively switchable between a monoscopic (2D) mode and a stereoscopic (3D) mode.

The change in mode may be effected by electrically or mechanically modifying the properties of the display device or by change of the image content - for example:
• by switching off the parallax optic
• by removing the parallax optic
• by controlling the shutter glasses
• by displaying the same image in a stereoscopic display mode
Special rules of classification

This group should be always assigned in combination with groups representing the respective display type.

**H04N 13/359**

Switching between monoscopic and stereoscopic modes

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

Details relating to the switching of the display between monoscopic and stereoscopic modes, e.g.:

- Synchronisation between the displayed image and the time of switching off the parallax barrier or the shutter glasses
- Control of backlight level or brightness in 2D mode and in 3D mode
- The display of warning messages before switching to 2D mode
- Switching to 2D mode upon detection of a specific event, like detection of user fatigue, or that a user's position is not suitable for stereoscopic viewing

**H04N 13/361**

Reproducing mixed stereoscopic images; Reproducing mixed monoscopic and stereoscopic images, e.g. a stereoscopic image overlay window on a monoscopic image background

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

- Displays capable of simultaneously displaying both monoscopic and stereoscopic video content
- Image display control, e.g. determining the position at which a parallax barrier should be activated to display a stereoscopic image upon a monoscopic image background

(Among the plurality of pixel regions included in the display panel 10, in the pixel region in which the user views an image through a region 20a in the light-blocking panel 20, a 3D image (L) for the left eye and a 3D image (R) for the right eye are displayed, whilst 2D images are displayed in the pixel regions other than the region.)
Relationships with other classification places
Generating mixed monoscopic and stereoscopic images when the mixing is performed irrespective of the display type is not covered by this group.

Examples of classification places which may be relevant for search, e.g. mixing a stereoscopic GUI or subtitles with a stereoscopic or monoscopic image, can be found in the informative references below.

References
Informative references
Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mixing stereoscopic image signals</th>
<th>H04N 13/156</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Subtitles or other on-screen display [OSD] information, e.g. menus</td>
<td>H04N 13/183</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Special rules of classification
This group should be always assigned in combination with a respective display type, for example:

| for autostereoscopic displays | H04N 13/302 |

H04N 13/363
using image projection screens (volumetric display H04N 13/388)

Definition statement
This place covers:
Stereoscopic display systems using projection devices

References
Limiting references
This place does not cover:

| Volumetric displays | H04N 13/388 |

Informative references
Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Stereoscopic photography by simultaneous viewing using two or more projectors | G03B 35/20 |
| Stereoscopic photography by simultaneous viewing using single projector with stereoscopic-base-defining system | G03B 35/22 |

Special rules of classification
This group should be always assigned in combination with a respective display type, for example:

| projection devices for autostereoscopic displays | H04N 13/302 |
H04N 13/365
using digital micromirror devices [DMD]

Definition statement

This place covers:
- Stereoscopic or multi-view display systems using micromechanical devices, e.g. MEMS mirror devices or DMD based spatial light modulators (SLMs)

H04N 13/366
using viewer tracking

Definition statement

This place covers:
- Different aspects of viewer tracking for control of stereoscopic systems, for example:
  - adjusting the viewing zones of an autostereoscopic display
  - adjusting the depth according to a user’s position or orientation
  - generating different perspectives
  - controlling the image capturing process, e.g. adjusting the camera separation between real (or virtual) cameras used for image generation
  - determining user fatigue
  - performing geometrical corrections, e.g. vertical parallax
  - switching the display between 2D and 3D mode
  - rotating the display toward the viewer
  - generating motion parallax
  - adjusting depth parameters or for crosstalk cancellation

This group also covers display systems which detect the presence of a viewer in front of the display, e.g. by detecting that the shutter glasses are switched on.

References

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Input arrangements or combined input and output arrangements for interaction between user and computer, for example viewer tracking for gesture recognition | G06F 3/01 |
Special rules of classification

This group should be assigned in combination with a group for the respective display type, when specific properties of the display device are controlled, e.g. when the parallax optic is moved as a function of the user position:

(Control of the parallax barrier as a function of the user position)

This group should be assigned in combination with groups under H04N 13/20 for respective stereoscopic picture signal generators when specific properties of the picture signal generator (e.g. camera base line distance, convergence point, zoom or orientation) are controlled as a function of the viewer position with respect to the display screen.

This group should be assigned in combination with groups under H04N 13/10 for respective stereoscopic image processing, when specific image signal properties are controlled as a function of the viewer position.

H04N 13/368

for two or more viewers

Definition statement

This place covers:

- Generation of respective viewing zones for multi-viewer autostereoscopic displays
- Providing different perspectives to different viewers depending on their positions
- Providing different images to different viewers upon detection of multiple users (e.g. for privacy purposes)
- Adjusting viewing zones of multi-view image displays when viewed by several viewers
(A multi-user autostereoscopic display)

(Stereoscopic display for providing different perspective to different user depending on their position)

(screen and signal processing unit)

(glasses switching signal emitter)

(camera)

(3D glasses)

(A multi-view image display when viewed by several viewers)
H04N 13/383
for tracking with gaze detection, i.e. detecting the lines of sight of the viewer's eyes

References
Informative references
Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Input arrangements or combined input and output arrangements for interaction between user and computer, e.g. eye tracking input arrangements | G06F 3/01 |

H04N 13/385
alternating rapidly the location of the left-right image components on the display screens (for viewing without the aid of special glasses using time variant parallax barriers H04N 13/315; displays for viewing with the aid of special glasses or head-mounted displays using temporal multiplexing H04N 13/341)

Definition statement
This place covers:
• Temporally multiplexed displays

Relationships with other classification places
Polarisation multiplexing displays, using time alternating display of left and right images and passive polarising glasses, are classified in H04N 13/337.

Autostereoscopic displays, using an array of controllable light sources or a moving aperture or light source when the left and right images are alternately displayed in time, are classified in H04N 13/32.

References
Limiting references
This place does not cover:

| Autostereoscopic displays using time-variant parallax barriers | H04N 13/315 |
| Stereoscopic displays for viewing with the aid of special glasses or head-mounted displays [HMD], using temporal multiplexing | H04N 13/341 |

Special rules of classification
This group should be always assigned in combination with a respective display type.
**H04N 13/388**

Volumetric displays, i.e. systems where the image is built up from picture elements distributed through a volume

**Definition statement**

This place covers:
Display devices forming a visual representation of an object in 3D

The volumetric display creates 3D images by the selective emission, scattering, or relaying of illumination from defined points within the 3D viewing volume.

**Relationships with other classification places**

Neither holographic nor multi-view displays should be classified in this group.

Most volumetric 3-D displays create 3-D imagery visible to the unaided eye. However, other displays not relying upon additional viewing aids (e.g. glasses) should be classified in their relevant groups. For example, autostereoscopic displays are classified in H04N 13/302, whilst multi-view displays are classified in H04N 13/349.

**References**

**Informative references**

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Displays</th>
<th>Classification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Autostereoscopic displays</td>
<td>H04N 13/302</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multi-view displays</td>
<td>H04N 13/349</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Holographic processes or apparatus using light for obtaining images from holograms</td>
<td>G03H 1/00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**H04N 13/393**

the volume being generated by a moving, e.g. vibrating or rotating, surface

**Definition statement**

This place covers:

Volumetric displays wherein image content is displayed upon, and synchronised with, the position of a moving surface such that the viewer perceives a 3D volume. Examples include swept-volume displays in which a 3D object is decomposed into 2D slices which are sequentially displayed or projected upon
a rotating planar surface. If the rate of sequential display and corresponding surface rotation are sufficiently high, the human eye perceives a displayed 3D volume, due to persistence of vision.

**Fig. 2b**

(The volumetric 3D display includes a transparent enclosure 252, a projection screen 254, rasterization electronics 256, a projection engine 258, and relay optics 260.)

**H04N 13/395**

with depth sampling, i.e. the volume being constructed from a stack or sequence of 2D image planes

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

Volumetric displays in which the 3D image volume is decomposed into a series ('stack') of constituent 2D image planes, each of which is displayed individually, for example by separate display units or by changing the depth of focus of the image projection optics. When the 2D image planes are viewed together, or in rapid succession, the viewer perceives a 3D volume.
(The 3D display apparatus comprises an array of multiple layers of display units comprising at least two layers of display units 10)

**H04N 13/398**

**Synchronisation thereof; Control thereof**

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

- Synchronisation between left and right images output to a display
- Synchronisation between a temporally varying parallax optic and the corresponding image signal provided to the display
- Synchronisation between shutter glasses and the image display period of a shutter display
- Controlling the position of a parallax optic in order to change the depth resolution
- Controlling a display to switch between different modes of operation
- Controlling shutter glasses to switch off when not in use
- Controlling the display timing, backlight or shutter glasses in order to reduce crosstalk
- Controlling the synchronisation protocols between shutter glasses and display
- Controlling the number of generated views depending upon user selection or upon the number of detected viewers
- User interfaces for controlling stereoscopic display properties.

**Special rules of classification**

This group should normally be assigned in combination with a respective display type, for example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Synchronisation or control aspects for autostereoscopic displays</th>
<th>H04N 13/302</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Control arrangements or circuits to produce spatial visual effects, for example rotating displays</td>
<td>G09G 3/00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When classifying in this group, classification in G09G 3/00 should also be considered, particularly if aspects of synchronisation or control are present, which relate to the type of display panel (e.g. whether it is an LCD, an OLED, etc.).

**H04N 17/00**

**Diagnosis, testing or measuring for television systems or their details**

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

Hardware-related or software-related aspects specific to measuring or testing of values involved in the television signal processing at the transmitter side and/or the receiver side, for analog or digital television signal.

**Relationships with other classification places**

H04N 17/00 features test techniques for all the devices which belong to the television chain: television cameras, transmission path, television receivers or recorders, distribution systems which are found in H04N 5/00, H04N 7/00, H04N 9/00, H04N 11/00, H04N 21/00.
References

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Arrangements for locating faults; Arrangements for electrical testing characterised by what is being tested not provided for elsewhere | G01R 31/00 |
| Testing correct operation of photographic apparatus or parts thereof | G03B 43/00 |
| Electronic inspection or testing of displays and display drivers, e.g. of LED or LCD displays | G09G 3/006 |
| Monitoring of transmission systems; Testing of transmission systems | H04B 17/00 |

Special rules of classification

**H04N 17/00** features a limited number of CPC symbols and has an associated Indexing Code scheme with additional subdivisions: **H04N 17/00**

Allocation of CPC symbols and/or Indexing Code symbols:

- a document containing invention information relating to testing of television systems or details will be given an **H04N 17/00** CPC symbol as invention information
- a document containing additional information relating to testing of television systems or details will be given an **H04N 17/00** CPC symbol as invention information
- a document merely mentioning details of colour television systems will not be given a CPC symbol as invention information, but it may receive an Indexing Code if the disclosure is considered relevant.

Monitoring aspects are also covered in the appropriate main groups, e.g. **H04N 5/00, H04N 7/00, H04N 21/00**.

**H04N 19/00**

Methods or arrangements for coding, decoding, compressing or decompressing digital video signals

Definition statement

This place covers:

- Methods or arrangements for coding or compressing an input digital video sequence for the purpose of onward transmission (e.g. by broadcasting), or of storage (e.g. at servers, set-top boxes or hard-disks) for subsequent reproduction in viewers' premises.
- Processing in accordance with standards such as MPEG-x or H.26x.
- Methods or arrangements for transform coding of static images.
- The scope of **H04N 19/00** and its subgroups is limited to the part of digital video coding and compression strictly comprised between the digital video input and the compressed video output.

Relationships with other classification places

- Processing of the compressed video (e.g. fragmentation in packet units, encapsulation, medium adaptation for transport, video distribution) is covered by **H04N 21/00 or H04H**.
- Processing of not yet compressed video signals or after decoding, such as re-sampling, interpolation, cropping, rotation, is generally covered by **G06T**, unless it interacts with aspects of processing for compression, in which case it is covered by relevant subgroups of **H04N 19/00**.
- Computer graphics compression is covered by **G06T 9/00**.
- General compression algorithms are covered by **H03M 7/30**.
• Processing of documents or images for scanning, transmission or reproduction (e.g. telefax) is covered by H04N 1/00.
• Details of digital television cameras, digital television receivers and digital video recorders are covered by H04N 5/00.

References

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Information retrieval and database structures therefor, e.g. in image databases | G06F 16/00 |
| Pattern recognition (characters, fingerprints) | G06K 9/00 |
| General purpose image data processing, e.g. hardware for image processing | G06T 1/00 |
| Geometric image transformation in the plane of the image | G06T 3/00 |
| Image restoration | G06T 5/00 |
| Image analysis, e.g. analysis of motion | G06T 7/00 |
| Image coding | G06T 9/00 |
| 2D image generation | G06T 11/00 |
| 2D image animation (e.g. sprites in general) | G06T 13/00 |
| 3D image rendering | G06T 15/00 |
| 3D image modelling | G06T 17/00 |
| Speech or audio signal analysis-synthesis techniques for redundancy reduction, e.g. in vocoders; Coding or decoding of speech or audio signals, using source filter models or psychoacoustic analysis | G10L 19/00 |
| Editing; Indexing; Addressing; Timing or synchronising; Monitoring; Measuring tape travel, e.g. signal processing for video editing and recording on a special recording medium | G11B 27/00 |
| General data coding | H03M |
| Details of multimedia broadcast systems | H04H |
| Processing of documents or images for scanning, transmission or reproduction (e.g. telefax) | H04N 1/00 |
| Bandwidth or redundancy reduction for scanning, transmission or reproduction of documents or the like, e.g. compression of two-tone or discrete tone static images | H04N 1/41 |
| Colour conversion | H04N 1/60 |
| Studio equipment, e.g. video cameras or devices for controlling television cameras | H04N 5/222 |
| Television receivers | H04N 5/44 |
| Video recording and play (e.g. trick play) | H04N 5/76 |
| Closed circuit TV systems, details of video-surveillance cameras and circuits | H04N 7/18 |
| Stereoscopic or multiview television systems | H04N 13/00 |
| Diagnosis, testing or measuring for television systems | H04N 17/00 |
| Selective content distribution | H04N 21/00 |
Synonyms and Keywords

In patent documents, the following abbreviations are often used:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>JPEG</td>
<td>Joint Photographic Experts Group</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AVC</td>
<td>Advanced Video Coding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SVC</td>
<td>Scalable Video Coding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HEVC</td>
<td>High Efficiency Video Coding</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

H04N 19/10

using adaptive coding

Definition statement

This place covers:

Static or dynamic adaptation in the interaction of the different building blocks or processes of the digital video compressor or decompressor, e.g. regulation of the parameters involved in the compression algorithm as a function of the channel capacity or of the desired quality of the reconstructed video signal.

References

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>CPC Code</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Controlling the complexity of the video stream at the transmitter side, e.g. by scaling the resolution or bitrate of the video stream</td>
<td>H04N 21/2662</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Content or additional data management, e.g. controlling the complexity of the video stream at the receiver side</td>
<td>H04N 21/462</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Special rules of classification

When classifying in this group, each aspect relating to adaptive coding should, insomuch as possible, be classified in each one of subgroups H04N 19/102, H04N 19/134, H04N 19/169, and H04N 19/189.
**H04N 19/102**

**characterised by the element, parameter or selection affected or controlled by the adaptive coding**

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

The definition of the element, parameter or selection, which is affected by the adaptive coding, wherein element is to be understood as a functional block or process in the digital video compressor or decompressor.

**H04N 19/105**

**Selection of the reference unit for prediction within a chosen coding or prediction mode, e.g. adaptive choice of position and number of pixels used for prediction**

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

The selection of the reference unit (as contained e.g. in the memories in the figure below) for prediction within a chosen coding or prediction mode, e.g.:

- weighted prediction
- adaptive choice of position and number of pixels used for prediction
- choice between different motion estimators or compensators (e.g. between diamond search and full search, between global and local motion compensation) skip mode, merge mode
- adaptive choice of the reference frame or block in predictive encoding, e.g. spatial, temporal, interlayer or interview compensation.
- adaptive reference picture list management

**References**

**Limiting references**

*This place does not cover:*

| Non-adaptive reference picture list management | H04N 19/50 |
Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Multiple frame prediction</th>
<th>H04N 19/573</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bidirectional image interpolation, B-frames</td>
<td>H04N 19/577</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Long-term prediction</td>
<td>H04N 19/58</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**H04N 19/107**

between spatial and temporal predictive coding, e.g. picture refresh

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

The selection between spatial and temporal predictive coding, e.g. picture refresh by insertion of an intra-coded frame, as e.g. periodically or at scene change, or decision among intra-mode and inter-mode as in the figure.

**Glossary of terms**

*In this place, the following terms or expressions are used with the meaning indicated:*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Intra-frame, I-frame</td>
<td>Frame coded with spatial prediction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inter-frame, P-frame</td>
<td>Frame coded with temporal prediction in one temporal direction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bidirectional-frame, B-frame</td>
<td>Frame coded with temporal prediction in both temporal directions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anchor frame</td>
<td>A frame usable for prediction of other frames, i.e. an intra-frame or an inter-frame</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**H04N 19/109**

among a plurality of temporal predictive coding modes

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

The selection among a plurality of temporal predictive coding modes, e.g. a plurality of inter-prediction modes as in the standard H.263 or H.264.
**H04N 19/11**

among a plurality of spatial predictive coding modes

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

The selection among a plurality of spatial predictive coding modes, e.g. a plurality of intra-prediction modes as the directional block intra-prediction modes in the standard H.264 shown below.

**H04N 19/112**

according to a given display mode, e.g. for interlaced or progressive display mode

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

The selection of a given display mode, e.g. interlaced or progressive as in the figure (as in MBAFF of H.264), and of the associated coding or prediction mode.
References

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Conversion of standards in television systems, e.g. at the pixel level of a picture from interlaced to progressive display mode and vice versa | H04N 7/01 |

Glossary of terms

In this place, the following terms or expressions are used with the meaning indicated:

| MBAFF | Macroblock-adaptive frame-field coding |

H04N 19/114

Adapting the group of pictures [GOP] structure, e.g. number of B-frames between two anchor frames (H04N 19/107 takes precedence)

Definition statement

This place covers:

- The adaptation of the length or the composition of a GOP, e.g. by changing the number of B-frames between anchor frames or by changing the number of P-frames between I-frames.
- The selection of the structure of a group-of-pictures [GOP], e.g. of the number of P-frames, B-frames between two anchor frames, e.g. as in the figure below.

References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

| The selection between spatial and temporal predictive coding | H04N 19/107 |
Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

Bidirectional image interpolation, B-frames  H04N 19/577

Glossary of terms

In this place, the following terms or expressions are used with the meaning indicated:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Group-of-pictures</td>
<td>A group of successive pictures forming a logical unit within a coded video sequence in H.26x and MPEG standards.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Open GOP</td>
<td>A GOP which uses referenced pictures from the previous GOP at the current GOP boundary.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Closed GOP</td>
<td>A GOP that uses no referenced pictures from the previous GOP at the current GOP boundary (e.g. the classic GOP starting with an I frame).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Synonyms and Keywords

In patent documents, the following abbreviations are often used:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>GOF</td>
<td>Group of frames.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GOP</td>
<td>Group of pictures.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**H04N 19/115**

Selection of the code volume for a coding unit prior to coding

**Definition statement**

>This place covers:

The selection of the target rate or code volume assigned to a coding unit before coding the unit itself, e.g. to a picture or a group-of-pictures, as done within the rate controller in the figure below, or selection of frame rate.

![Rate Controller Diagram](Diagram)

**References**

**Informative references**

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>H04N 19/146</td>
<td>Data rate or code amount at the encoder output</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**H04N 19/117**

Filters, e.g. for pre-processing or post-processing (sub-band filter banks H04N 19/635)

**Definition statement**

>This place covers:

Subject matter wherein the filtering is required to be part of an adaptive coding process, e.g. quantization controlling the filtering process, adaptive switching function after filtering process, optional
filtering characteristics, adaptive selection of a filter type or of filter parameters, like strength and taps, as within the filter indicated in the figure below in function of a threshold determination.

References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

Sub-band based transform characterised by filter definition or implementation details

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

Details of filtering operations specially adapted for video compression and not necessarily of adaptive nature

Pre-processing or post-processing specially adapted for video compression

Image enhancement or restoration by use of local operators

Impedance networks; Resonators

H04N 19/117

Adaptive subdivision aspects, e.g. subdivision of a picture into rectangular or non-rectangular coding blocks

Definition statement

This place covers:

- Adaptive segmentation aspects during video compression, e.g. ROI segmentation.
- The selection of the subdivision of a picture into coding blocks, i.e. the determination of the grid of blocks covering a picture.
- The selection may involve the shape, e.g. rectangular or non-rectangular, or the size of the blocks, e.g. in the standard H.264 with selection among 4 x 4, 4 x 8, 8 x 4, 8 x 8 pixel block sizes as shown in the figures below.
**Glossary of terms**

_In this place, the following terms or expressions are used with the meaning indicated:_

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Macroblock</td>
<td>A MPEG coding unit including 16 x 16 pixels subdivided into four 8 x 8 blocks.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Synonyms and Keywords**

_In patent documents, the following expressions/words block", "sub-block", "tile" are often used as synonyms._

_In patent documents the word "tile" is often used in the context of the standard JPEG 2000 and of transform coding of static images._

**H04N 19/12**

_Selection from among a plurality of transforms or standards, e.g. selection between discrete cosine transform [DCT] and sub-band transform or selection between H.263 and H.264_

**Definition statement**

_This place covers:_

Selection from a plurality of alternative compression algorithms within a video compressor, e.g.
• Selection among discrete cosine transforms [DCT] and subband transforms.
• Selection from a plurality of video compression standards, e.g. selection among H.263 and H.264, selection among MPEG-2 and MPEG-4.
• Selection between lossy and lossless compression.
• Transform skip mode (cf., hevc).

References

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Video compression based on transform coding | H04N 19/60 |
| Special coding techniques and algorithms   | H04N 19/90 |
**H04N 19/122**

Selection of transform size, e.g. 8x8 or 2x4x8 DCT; Selection of sub-band transforms of varying structure or type

**Definition statement**

This place covers:

The selection of transform size within the same predetermined transform algorithm, e.g. 4x4 or 8x8 DCT as in the figure below, or 8x8 or 2x4x8 DCT for frame-based and for field-based block compression, respectively, or sub-band transforms of varying hierarchical structure or type.
H04N 19/124
Quantisation

Definition statement
This place covers:
Subject matter wherein specific details of a controlled quantiser is provided, e.g. frame type or input video characteristics controlling the quantiser, adaptive quantisation based on output or transmission buffer fullness, choice between fine or coarse quantisation.

H04N 19/126
Details of normalisation or weighting functions, e.g. normalisation matrices or variable uniform quantisers

Definition statement
This place covers:
Special algorithms used for quantisation in video compression, e.g. the choice of normalisation parameters or matrices, details of variable uniform quantisers or the calculation of quantisation weighting matrices.

H04N 19/127
Prioritisation of hardware or computational resources

Definition statement
This place covers:
The control of resource allocation or assignment (e.g. CPU time, memory, allocation of digital processing units, workload distribution among processors), e.g. skipping of encoding or decoding
steps or switching off computing or hardware units, like e.g. motion estimation/compensation or transform units.

References

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Filtering control</th>
<th>H04N 19/117</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sampling, masking or truncation of coding units</td>
<td>H04N 19/132</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Availability of hardware or computational resources, e.g. adapting coding based on assigned resources</td>
<td>H04N 19/156</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Implementation details or hardware specially adapted for video compression or decompression</td>
<td>H04N 19/42</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
H04N 19/129
Scanning of coding units, e.g. zig-zag scan of transform coefficients or flexible macroblock ordering [FMO]

Definition statement
This place covers:
The adaptation of the scanning of coding units, e.g. the choice of a zig-zag scan of transform coefficients in a transform compressor, as in the figure, or the use of flexible macroblock ordering [FMO].

References
Informative references
Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Definition of the coding unit</th>
<th>H04N 19/169</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Video coding involving rearrangement of data among different coding units</td>
<td>H04N 19/88</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**H04N 19/13**

Adaptive entropy coding, e.g. adaptive variable length coding [AVLC] or context adaptive binary arithmetic coding [CABAC]

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

Subject matter wherein the entropy coding is adapted, e.g. frame type determining the coding table, CABAC, CAVLC, adaptive Huffman coding, choosing among different VLC methods for coding as in the figure.

**References**

**Informative references**

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Non-adaptive entropy coding for video compression | H04N 19/91 |
| Non-adaptive run-length coding for video compression | H04N 19/93 |
| Conversion to or from variable length codes in general | H03M 7/40 |
| Conversion to or from run-length codes in general | H03M 7/46 |
Synonyms and Keywords

In patent documents, the following abbreviations are often used:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>VLC</td>
<td>Variable Length Coding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CABAC</td>
<td>Context-Adaptive Binary Arithmetic Coding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CAVLC</td>
<td>Context-Adaptive Variable Length Coding</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**H04N 19/132**

Sampling, masking or truncation of coding units, e.g. adaptive resampling, frame skipping, frame interpolation or high-frequency transform coefficient masking

**Definition statement**

This place covers:

Adaptive sampling, masking or truncation of coding units, e.g. adaptive resampling, frame skipping, frame interpolation or high frequency transform coefficient masking, i.e. suppression or setting to zero, macroblock skipping, as in the figure.

**References**

**Informative references**

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference Description</th>
<th>Classification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Adaptive prioritisation of hardware or computational resources</td>
<td>H04N 19/127</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Definition of the coding unit</td>
<td>H04N 19/169</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Temporal sampling or interpolation for video coding</td>
<td>H04N 19/587</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spatial sampling or interpolation for video coding</td>
<td>H04N 19/59</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**H04N 19/134**

characterised by the element, parameter or criterion affecting or controlling the adaptive coding

**Definition statement**

This place covers:

The definition of an element, a parameter or criterion, which exercises the control of an adapted element or selection as classified in H04N 19/102 in the adaptive coding, wherein element is to be understood as a functional block or process in the digital video compressor or decompressor.

**H04N 19/137**

Motion inside a coding unit, e.g. average field, frame or block difference

**Definition statement**

This place covers:

Determination of motion inside a coding unit, e.g. amount of temporal prediction errors, such as average difference calculated on a field, on a frame or on a block in two different time instants.

**References**

**Informative references**

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Motion estimation or compensation for video compression</th>
<th>H04N 19/51</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Analysis of motion in general</td>
<td>G06T 7/20</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**H04N 19/139**

Analysis of motion vectors, e.g. their magnitude, direction, variance or reliability

**Definition statement**

This place covers:

The measure of motion performed by explicitly using motion vectors (e.g. magnitude, direction, variance, reliability measures).
References

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Motion estimation or compensation for video compression | H04N 19/51 |
| Analysis of motion in general                         | G06T 7/20  |

H04N 19/14

Coding unit complexity, e.g. amount of activity or edge presence estimation (H04N 19/146 takes precedence)

Definition statement

This place covers:

Determination of coding unit complexity, e.g. by means of an activity detection, as in the figure below by means e.g. of flatness detection or energy of transform coefficients, by means of the detection of edge presence or by means of determination of the amount of spatial prediction error.

References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

Measure of complexity defined by data rate or code amount at the encoder output | H04N 19/146
H04N 19/142
Detection of scene cut or scene change

Definition statement
This place covers:
The adaptive control of the video compression in response to detected scene cut or change.

References
Informative references
Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>CPC</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Picture signal circuitry for video frequency region, e.g. scene change detection in television systems</td>
<td>H04N 5/14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Methods involving scene cut or scene change detection in combination with video compression</td>
<td>H04N 19/87</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

H04N 19/146
Data rate or code amount at the encoder output

Definition statement
This place covers:
The adaptive control of video compression by using information about the data rate or code amount at the encoder output.
### References

**Informative references**

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adaptation of the selection of the code volume for a coding unit prior to coding</th>
<th>H04N 19/115</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**H04N 19/147**

according to rate distortion criteria (rate-distortion as a criterion for motion estimation H04N 19/567)

### Definition statement

*This place covers:*

The adaptation of encoding as a function of data rate or code amount determined according to rate-distortion criteria, e.g. as a function of a cost function.

### References

**Limiting references**

*This place does not cover:*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rate distortion as a criterion for motion estimation</th>
<th>H04N 19/567</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Informative references**

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adaptation based on measured or subjectively estimated visual quality after decoding</th>
<th>H04N 19/154</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Adaptation using optimisation based on Lagrange multipliers</td>
<td>H04N 19/19</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Glossary of terms

*In this place, the following terms or expressions are used with the meaning indicated:*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cost function</th>
<th>A function of target parameters, as output rate and quality measurement after decoding (e.g. distortion).</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**H04N 19/149**

by estimating the code amount by means of a model, e.g. mathematical model or statistical model

### Definition statement

*This place covers:*

The estimation of the code amount by means of a model, e.g. a mathematical model or a statistical model, as done in the MPEG-2 Test Model 5 (TM5)
**References**

**Informative references**

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

Methods or arrangements, for coding, decoding, compressing or decompressing digital video signals using adaptive coding characterised by the adaptation method, adaptation tool or adaptation type used for the adaptive coding

**H04N 19/149**

by monitoring actual compressed data size at the memory before deciding storage at the transmission buffer

**Definition statement**

This place covers:

The estimation of the code amount by off-line encoding, i.e. encoding without storing at the transmission buffer, e.g. by means of a separate encoder as in the figure below, and counting of the actual data size of the compressed elementary stream.

**References**

**Informative references**

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

Data rate or code amount at the encoder output by estimating the code amount by means of a model

**H04N 19/149**
**H04N 19/152**

by measuring the fullness of the transmission buffer

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

The control of the video coding by using the measurement of fullness in the transmission buffer, where the buffer may be implicit, as e.g. in the cases of a storage medium, a memory, a physical channel having a certain bit capacity.

![Diagram](image)

**References**

**Informative references**

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Processing of video elementary streams | H04N 21/234 |

**H04N 19/154**

Measured or subjectively estimated visual quality after decoding, e.g. measurement of distortion (use of rate-distortion criteria H04N 19/147)

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

The control of video coding by means of quality after decoding, as measured, e.g. by means of distortion measurement, or as estimated by means of subjective tests.

This subgroup should be assigned, when quality is not particularly linked to output bit-rate.
References

Limiting references
This place does not cover:

| Use of rate-distortion criteria | H04N 19/147 |

Informative references
Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Data rate or code amount at the encoder output, e.g. where the quality measure is directly linked to output bit-rate | H04N 19/146 |

H04N 19/156

Availability of hardware or computational resources, e.g. encoding based on power-saving criteria

Definition statement
This place covers:
The control of video coding in dependence of the availability of hardware or computational resources, e.g. encoding based on power-saving criteria, time constrained encoding.
**References**

*Informative references*

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Prioritisation of hardware or computational resources, e.g. adaptively controlling the assignment of coding resources | H04N 19/127 |
| Implementation details or hardware specially adapted for video compression or decompression | H04N 19/42 |

**H04N 19/157**

Assigned coding mode, i.e. the coding mode being predefined or preselected to be further used for selection of another element or parameter

**Definition statement**

This place covers:

- The control of video coding as a function of the coding mode assigned to the unit to be coded, i.e. the coding mode of the unit to be coded is predefined or preselected.
- The subgroup H04N 19/159 covers the case that the coding mode is the prediction type used for the unit to be coded, e.g. intra, inter or bidirectional, as in the figure directly below.
The subgroup H04N 19/16 covers the case that the assigned coding mode is for a given display mode, e.g. for interlaced or progressive display mode, as in the figure directly below.

**H04N 19/162**  
**User input**

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

The control of the video encoding by means of the input from a user, e.g. from a user interface.

**H04N 19/164**  
**Feedback from the receiver or from the transmission channel**

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

- The control of encoding the elementary video stream as a function of the feedback from the client/receiver or from the transmission channel, as e.g. in the figure below.
- The subgroup H04N 19/166 covers in particular the case that the feedback contains a certain amount of transmission errors, e.g. by means of a bit- or packet-error-rate detection.

**Relationships with other classification places**

The control of encoding as a function of the feedback from the receiver or from the transmission channel in a general telecommunication context is covered in H04L and H04W.
References

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>CPC Class</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Embedding additional information in the video signal during the</td>
<td>H04N 19/46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>compression process</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Control signalling related to video distribution between receiver,</td>
<td>H04N 21/63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>transmitter, and network components</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transmission of management data between client and server</td>
<td>H04N 21/65</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Synonyms and Keywords

In patent documents, the following abbreviations are often used:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Full Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BER</td>
<td>Bit Error Rate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PER</td>
<td>Packet Error Rate</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

H04N 19/167

Position within a video image, e.g. region of interest [ROI]

Definition statement

This place covers:

• The control of the video encoding as a function of a coding unit’s position within a video image, e.g. the adoption of coding parameters adapted to a region of interest, different coding of foreground and of background, different coding at the image centre and at the image borders.
• Adaptive video coding depends generally indirectly on the position within an image, e.g. coding parameters may be varied across coding units, e.g. blocks.
• The present subgroup covers the case when the spatial position within the image is explicitly and directly defined as a criterion.

References

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>CPC Class</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Image region as coding unit</td>
<td>H04N 19/17</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Synonyms and Keywords

In patent documents, the following abbreviations are often used:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Full Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ROI</td>
<td>Region Of Interest</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**H04N 19/169**

characterised by the coding unit, i.e. the structural portion or semantic portion of the video signal being the object or the subject of the adaptive coding

**Definition statement**

This place covers:

Definition of the video coding units that are controlled by or controlling the adaptive coding. The subgroups of H04N 19/169 define explicitly which coding units are meant.

**References**

**Informative references**

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

with respect to H04N 19/179, referring to scene or shot as coding unit:

| Methods involving scene cut or scene change detection in combination with video compression | H04N 19/87 |

with respect to H04N 19/187, referring to scalable layer as coding unit:

| Hierarchical and scalability techniques | H04N 19/30 |

**Glossary of terms**

In this place, the following terms or expressions are used with the meaning indicated:

| (Video) Object | MPEG-4 object, i.e. a region of the image with arbitrary shape |
| Slice | A set of blocks within an image, e.g. a line of blocks. |
| Block | A rectangular matrix of pixels. |
| Macroblock | MPEG coding unit formed by four blocks arranged as a 2 x 2 matrix. |
| Group of pictures | MPEG coding unit formed by a set of consecutive pictures. |
| Scalable video layer | Coding unit of a scalable encoded video elementary stream |

**Synonyms and Keywords**

In patent documents, the following abbreviations are often used:

| GOB | Group of Blocks |
| GOP | Group of Pictures |
| GOF | Group of Frames |
| FMO | H.264 Flexible Macroblock Ordering |

In patent documents, the following words/expressions are often used as synonyms:

- "slice" and "GOB"; "block" and "tile"
H04N 19/17
the unit being an image region, e.g. an object

Definition statement
This place covers:
Adaptive coding applied to regions of interest [ROI].

H04N 19/174
the region being a slice, e.g. a line of blocks or a group of blocks

Definition statement
This place covers:
Adaptive coding on any groups of blocks as long as these are linked to each other in a well-defined manner, such as slices in AVC and tiles in HEVC.

H04N 19/189
characterised by the adaptation method, adaptation tool or adaptation type used for the adaptive coding

Definition statement
This place covers:
Special mathematical or algorithmic formulations for the methods or tools used for video coding adaptation.

Special rules of classification
This group is residual with respect to its subgroups.

H04N 19/19
using optimisation based on Lagrange multipliers

Definition statement
This place covers:
The formulation in terms of optimisation based on Lagrange multiplier techniques, as e.g. in the cost function defined as $C = R + LD$, where $R$ is the output rate, $L$ is the Lagrange multiplier, and $D$ is the distortion after decoding.

H04N 19/192
the adaptation method, adaptation tool or adaptation type being iterative or recursive

Definition statement
This place covers:
- Iterative and recursive algorithms and techniques applied to the adaptation of video coding.
- The special case of two-pass or two-step algorithms are covered by H04N 19/194.
**H04N 19/196**

being specially adapted for the computation of encoding parameters, e.g. by averaging previously computed encoding parameters (processing of motion vectors [H04N 19/513])

**Definition statement**

This place covers:
Details of the mathematical laws or algorithms used for computation of encoding parameters (like e.g. quantisation step, coding mode), e.g. estimating a current encoding parameter by averaging previously computed encoding parameters, deriving the coding mode for the current coding unit from the coding mode of the neighbouring coding units. Neighbouring coding units may relate to views, layers, spatial or temporal neighbours.

**References**

**Limiting references**

This place does not cover:

| Formulations for processing of calculated motion vectors | H04N 19/513 |

**Informative references**

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Formulations for initializing motion vector search | H04N 19/56 |

**H04N 19/20**

using video object coding

**Definition statement**

This place covers:
Details of object-based video coding, as e.g. according to the standard MPEG-4.

**References**

**Informative references**

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Hierarchical and scalability techniques (cf. H04N 19/29) | H04N 19/30 |
| Processing of video elementary streams in the server, e.g. for generating or manipulating the scene composition of objects | H04N 21/234 |
| Processing of video elementary streams in the server involving reformatting operations of video signals for distribution or compliance with end-user requests or end-user device requirements, e.g. by decomposing video signals into objects | H04N 21/2343 |
| Processing of video elementary streams in the client device, e.g. involving rendering scenes according to scene graphs | H04N 21/44 |
| Contour coding | G06T 9/20 |
Glossary of terms

In this place, the following terms or expressions are used with the meaning indicated:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(Video) Object</td>
<td>MPEG-4 object, i.e. a region of the image with arbitrary shape</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alpha-plane</td>
<td>A discrete bitmap (generally binary) defining the part of a frame constituting a given object, e.g. in terms of the position of the pixels belonging to the object or in terms of the position of the blocks covering the object.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sprite</td>
<td>A unified background image derived by compositing the backgrounds of the single frames of a video sequence, e.g. having a camera motion throughout a video segment (within e.g. a scene, a shot, a GOP, a sequence). It may be static or dynamic.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scene description coding</td>
<td>The coded representation of the spatiotemporal positioning of audio-visual objects as well as their behaviour in response to interaction, as e.g. in the standard MPEG-4 Part 11.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Synthetic/natural hybrid coding</td>
<td>Part of the MPEG-4 standard relating to coding facial animation and mesh compression.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Synthetic picture component</td>
<td>A picture component that is coded by geometric modelling with synthesizing at reconstruction (e.g. avatar).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Natural picture component</td>
<td>A picture component that is coded &quot;as it stands&quot; without geometric modelling.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Synonyms and Keywords

In patent documents, the following abbreviations are often used:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BIFS</td>
<td>Binary Format for Scenes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SNHC</td>
<td>Synthetic/Natural Hybrid Coding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VOL</td>
<td>Video Object Layer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VOP</td>
<td>Video Object Plane</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In patent documents, the following words/expressions are often used as synonyms:

- "object", "video object", and "video object plane (VOP)"

H04N 19/30

using hierarchical techniques, e.g. scalability (H04N 19/63 takes precedence)

Definition statement

This place covers:

- Details of video coding, where the elementary video stream is coded so that it contains a hierarchy of different compressed representations of the same video sequence, wherein each representation may correspond e.g. to a different video resolution or video format. Layered coding is also covered here.
- The hierarchy may be incremental, as e.g. in scalable video coding (like the extension of the standard H.264 called Scalable Video Coding [SVC]).
References

Limiting references
This place does not cover:

| Transform coding using sub-band based transform, e.g. wavelets | H04N 19/63 |

Informative references
Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Processing of video elementary streams in the server involving reformatting operations of video signals for distribution or compliance with end-user requests or end-user device requirements, e.g. by decomposing video signals into layers at the transmitter side | H04N 21/2343 |
| Controlling the complexity of the video stream at the transmitter side, e.g. by scaling the resolution or bitrate of the video stream | H04N 21/2662 |
| Processing of video elementary streams in the client device involving reformatting operations of video signals for household redistribution, storage of real-time display, e.g. by decomposing video signals into layers at the receiver side | H04N 21/4402 |
| Content or additional data management, e.g. controlling the complexity of the video stream at the receiver side | H04N 21/462 |

Glossary of terms
In this place, the following terms or expressions are used with the meaning indicated:

| Temporal scalability | Scalability in terms of frame rate, meaning that a given bit stream includes different sub-streams each with a different frame rate or sub-streams that, when combined, increase the output frame rate. |
| Spatial scalability | Scalability in terms of spatial video sampling rate or resolution (e.g. quantisation step size, pixel bit depth), meaning that a given bit stream includes different sub-streams each with a different frame size or resolution or sub-streams that, when combined, increase the output frame size or resolution. |

H04N 19/31
in the temporal domain

Definition statement
This place covers:
Performing hierarchical or layered coding by acting on temporal resolution, e.g. temporal scalability.

References

Informative references
Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Predictive coding using temporal sub-sampling or interpolation | H04N 19/587 |
H04N 19/33

in the spatial domain

Definition statement

This place covers:
Performing hierarchical or layered coding by acting on spatial resolution, e.g. spatial scalability.

References

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Predictive coding involving spatial sub-sampling or interpolation | H04N 19/59 |

H04N 19/37

with arrangements for assigning different transmission priorities to video input data or to video coded data

Definition statement

This place covers:
The preliminary organisation of the video elementary stream with assignment of different priorities or importance to data to be further transmitted, e.g. for transmission or dropping.

References

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Error resilience techniques for digital video coding involving data partitioning | H04N 19/66 |
| Control signalling in networks for selective content distribution, e.g. multimode transmission | H04N 21/63 |
| Communication control characterised by a protocol, e.g. protocols for client-server architecture | H04L 29/06 |

H04N 19/40

using video transcoding, i.e. partial or full decoding of a coded input stream followed by re-encoding of the decoded output stream

Definition statement

This place covers:
Transcoding of the elementary video stream at the level of digital video coding, i.e. partial or full decoding of a coded input stream and re-encoding of the decoded output stream.
**References**

**Informative references**

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Classification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Video standard conversion at the pixel level, e.g. for analog television</td>
<td>H04N 7/01</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Video conference systems, e.g. reformatting video signals</td>
<td>H04N 7/15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Processing of video elementary streams at a server involving reformatting</td>
<td>H04N 21/2343</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>operations of video signals</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Processing of video elementary streams at a client device involving</td>
<td>H04N 21/4402</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reformatting operations of video signals</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Information retrieval, e.g. distillation of HTML documents for optimising</td>
<td>G06F 16/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the visualization of content or computer file format conversion</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Communication protocols, e.g. transcoding therefor</td>
<td>H04L 29/06</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**H04N 19/42**

characterised by implementation details or hardware specially adapted for
video compression or decompression, e.g. dedicated software implementation
(H04N 19/635 takes precedence)

**Definition statement**

This place covers:

Implementation details or hardware specific for elementary video compression or decompression, e.g.
dedicated software implementation, memory arrangements, parallel processing or hardware for motion
estimation or compensation.

**References**

**Limiting references**

This place does not cover:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Classification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Filter definition or implementation details for defining sub-band transforms</td>
<td>H04N 19/635</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Informative references**

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Classification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Decoder specific implementations</td>
<td>H04N 19/44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Binary arithmetic</td>
<td>G06F 7/60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Execution of machine instructions</td>
<td>G06F 9/30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pipelines</td>
<td>G06F 9/38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resource allocation</td>
<td>G06F 9/50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transfer of information, buses</td>
<td>G06F 13/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Digital computing</td>
<td>G06F 17/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Complex mathematical operations</td>
<td>G06F 17/10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Software or hardware implementations of Fourier, Walsh or analogous domain</td>
<td>G06F 17/14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>transformations</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**H04N 19/423**

characterised by memory arrangements (**H04N 19/433** takes precedence)

**Definition statement**

*This place covers*:

- Details of memory arrangements or management specifically dedicated to video compression.
- The subgroup **H04N 19/426** covers details of memory downsizing techniques.

**References**

**Limiting references**

*This place does not cover*:

| Techniques for memory access in motion estimation or compensation | **H04N 19/433** |

**Informative references**

*Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search*:

| Accessing, addressing or allocating within memory systems or architectures in general | **G06F 12/00** |
| Memory management for general purpose image data processing | **G06T 1/60** |
| Control arrangements or circuits for visual indicators common to cathode-ray tube indicators and other visual indicators, e.g. display memories | **G09G 5/00** |
| Static storage for general purpose data processing, e.g. memories, shift registers | **G11C** |

**H04N 19/44**

Decoders specially adapted therefor, e.g. video decoders which are asymmetric with respect to the encoder

**Definition statement**

*This place covers*:

Video decoders not symmetric with the corresponding encoders, i.e. decoding means or steps are not a mere reversal of the corresponding encoding means or steps, or specific hardware or software implementations details for the video decoder.

**References**

**Informative references**

*Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search*:

| Implementation details or hardware specific for video encoding and decoding | **H04N 19/42** |
| Complex mathematical operations | **G06F 17/10** |
H04N 19/46

Embedding additional information in the video signal during the compression process (H04N 19/517, H04N 19/68, H04N 19/70 take precedence)

Definition statement

This place covers:
- Subject matter wherein additional information is provided and transmitted within the compressed video signal, e.g. flag information or ancillary encoding information without details of syntax related data structure, watermarking.
- Encoding parameters are generally included for transmission in the video elementary stream.
- This group or its subgroups should be assigned if special details are provided about their insertion for transmission in the stream, e.g. compression is covered by H04N 19/463.

References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

| Motion vector coding and transmission | H04N 19/517 |
| Insertion of resynchronisation markers into the bitstream | H04N 19/68 |
| Syntax aspects related to video coding | H04N 19/70 |

H04N 19/467

characterised by the embedded information being invisible, e.g. watermarking

Definition statement

This place covers:
Details of the embedding of additional information during the coding process, which is embedded into the image part or into the auxiliary information of the elementary video bit stream in order to be invisible, e.g. by watermarking.

References

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Circuits or arrangements for control or supervision between transmitter and receiver, e.g. display, printing, storage or transmission of additional information in scanning, transmission or reproduction of documents or the like | H04N 1/32 |
| Generation or processing of content or additional data for video distribution by content creator independently of the distribution process; Content for video distribution per se | H04N 21/80 |
| Generation of protective data involving watermarking as additional data for video distribution | H04N 21/8358 |
**H04N 19/48**

using compressed domain processing techniques other than decoding, e.g. modification of transform coefficients, variable length coding [VLC] data or run-length data (motion estimation in a transform domain H04N 19/547; processing of decoded motion vectors H04N 19/513)

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

Details of compressed domain processing techniques other than decoding, e.g. modification of transform coefficients, of VLC data or of run-length data, filtering in the compressed domain.
References

Limiting references
This place does not cover:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Processing of decoded motion vectors</th>
<th>H04N 19/513</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Motion estimation in a transform domain</td>
<td>H04N 19/547</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

H04N 19/50

using predictive coding (**H04N 19/61** takes precedence)

Definition statement
This place covers:
Predictive digital video coding techniques not otherwise provided in other subgroups.

References

Limiting references
This place does not cover:

| Transform coding (constitutes a significant non trivial detail) used in combination with predictive coding | H04N 19/61 |

H04N 19/503

involving temporal prediction (adaptive coding with adaptive selection between spatial and temporal predictive coding **H04N 19/107**; adaptive coding with adaptive selection among a plurality of temporal predictive coding modes **H04N 19/109**)

Definition statement
This place covers:
- Predictive digital video coding techniques involving temporal prediction not otherwise provided in other subgroups.
- Details of temporal prediction are classified here.

References

Limiting references
This place does not cover:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adaptive coding with adaptive selection between spatial and temporal predictive coding</th>
<th>H04N 19/107</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Adaptive coding with adaptive selection among a plurality of temporal predictive coding modes</td>
<td>H04N 19/109</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**H04N 19/507**

using conditional replenishment

**Definition statement**

This place covers:

- Temporal predictive coding using conditional replenishment, i.e. transmitting only a portion of a picture, in which a change has been detected with respect to the corresponding co-located portion of the immediately previous picture.
- Conditional replenishment may be seen also as motion compensated temporal predictive encoding, using only skipping or transmission with zero motion vector.

**H04N 19/51**

Motion estimation or motion compensation

**Definition statement**

This place covers:

- Details of disparity estimation and compensation in stereoscopic or multi-view video coding are also covered in this subgroup and in its subgroups. For a synopsis of motion estimation techniques in video coding, see the figure below.

**References**

**Informative references**

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>CPC Code</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Picture signal circuitry for video frequency region, e.g. for movement detection in television systems not related to digital video coding</td>
<td>H04N 5/14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conversion of standards for analogue television systems, e.g. at pixel level involving interpolation processes involving the use of motion vectors</td>
<td>H04N 7/01</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Analysis of motion by image analysis in general

Glossary of terms

In this place, the following terms or expressions are used with the meaning indicated:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Motion vector</td>
<td>A two-dimensional vector used for inter prediction that provides an offset from the coordinates in the decoded picture to the coordinates in a reference picture.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Global motion estimation</td>
<td>Process to estimate the part of motion in a video sequence caused by camera motion, e.g. background motion by panning or zooming.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multiresolution motion estimation</td>
<td>Motion estimation performed on the same picture of a video sequence at different spatial sampling resolutions (coarse-to-fine: starting from the lowest resolution; fine-to-coarse: starting from the highest resolution).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Block-based matching motion estimation</td>
<td>Classic motion estimation based on the search of a best matching block in a reference frame.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Occlusion</td>
<td>A part of background or of a foreground object that is hidden in one frame and then uncovered in a following frame.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Motion) Search window</td>
<td>A region in a reference frame, where the search for the block or feature best matching the current block or feature is performed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Synonyms and Keywords

In patent documents, the following abbreviations are often used:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MV</td>
<td>Motion Vector</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GMV</td>
<td>Global Motion Vector</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAE</td>
<td>Mean Absolute Error</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAD</td>
<td>Mean Absolute Difference</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SAD</td>
<td>Sum of Absolute Differences</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MSE</td>
<td>Mean Squared Error</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCF</td>
<td>Cross-Correlation Function</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PDC</td>
<td>Pixel Difference Classification</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DFD</td>
<td>Displaced Frame Difference</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In patent documents, the following words/expressions are often used as synonyms:

- "reference frame" and "anchor frame"

H04N 19/513

Processing of motion vectors

Definition statement

This place covers:

- Subject matter wherein the determined or existing motion vectors are subjected to further processing or modification, e.g. scaling of motion vectors for scalability or transcoding purposes, encoding of motion vectors, reducing or dropping of motion vectors.
- Motion vector coding and predictive coding is covered in the subgroups.
References
Informative references
Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Processing of encoding parameters different from motion vectors | H04N 19/46 |

H04N 19/567
Motion estimation based on rate distortion criteria

References
Informative references
Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Rate distortion as a criterion for adaptive coding | H04N 19/147 |

H04N 19/573
Motion compensation with multiple frame prediction using two or more reference frames in a given prediction direction

Definition statement
This place covers:
Uni-directional or bi-directional motion compensation with more than one reference frame per direction

Glossary of terms
In this place, the following terms or expressions are used with the meaning indicated:

| Bi-directional motion frame interpolation | Temporal interpolation where a frame is predicted as a function both of a preceding anchor frame and of a succeeding anchor frame, e.g. by averaging. |

H04N 19/577
Motion compensation with bidirectional frame interpolation, i.e. using B-pictures

Definition statement
This place covers:
Bi-directional motion compensation with one or more than one reference frame per direction

Glossary of terms
In this place, the following terms or expressions are used with the meaning indicated:

| Bi-directional motion frame interpolation | Temporal interpolation where a frame is predicted as a function both of a preceding anchor frame and of a succeeding anchor frame, e.g. by averaging. |
**H04N 19/58**

Motion compensation with long-term prediction, i.e. the reference frame for a current frame not being the temporally closest one (H04N 19/23 takes precedence)

**Definition statement**

This place covers:

Prediction of a frame \( P_{\text{pred}} \) from an anchor frame \( P_{\text{anc}} \) that is not the closest anchor frame preceding or succeeding the frame to be predicted, cf. figure.

**References**

**Limiting references**

This place does not cover:

| Video object coding with coding of regions that are present throughout a whole video segment, e.g. sprites, background or mosaic | H04N 19/23 |

**H04N 19/587**

involving temporal sub-sampling or interpolation, e.g. decimation or subsequent interpolation of pictures in a video sequence

**Definition statement**

This place covers:

Sub-sampling or interpolation in the temporal domain during digital video compression or decompression.

**References**

**Informative references**

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Conversion of standards for analogue television systems, at pixel level involving interpolation processes | H04N 7/01 |
| Adaptive sampling for adaptive digital video coding | H04N 19/132 |
| Video compression using hierarchical techniques in the temporal domain | H04N 19/31 |
H04N 19/59

involving spatial sub-sampling or interpolation, e.g. alteration of picture size or resolution

Definition statement

This place covers:
- Sub-sampling or interpolation in the spatial domain during digital video compression or decompression.
- Details of sub-sampling or interpolation operations during motion estimation and compensation with sub-pixel accuracy are also covered here.

References

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Conversion of standards for analogue television systems, at pixel level involving interpolation processes | H04N 7/01 |
| Adaptive sampling for adaptive digital video coding | H04N 19/132 |
| Video compression using hierarchical techniques in the spatial domain | H04N 19/33 |
| Motion estimation or motion compensation with sub-pixel accuracy | H04N 19/523 |
| Scaling the whole image or part thereof, e.g. by interpolation based image scaling | G06T 3/40 |

H04N 19/593

involving spatial prediction techniques

Definition statement

This place covers:
Digital video compression involving spatial prediction techniques, e.g. details of intra prediction.

References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

| Adaptive coding with adaptive selection between spatial and temporal predictive coding | H04N 19/107 |
| Adaptive coding with adaptive selection among a plurality of spatial predictive coding modes | H04N 19/11 |
**H04N 19/597**

specially adapted for multi-view video sequence encoding

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

Details of stereoscopic or multi-view digital video coding including processing (e.g. compression) of depth maps.

**References**

**Informative references**

*Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Details of stereoscopic or multi-view digital video coding including processing (e.g. compression) of depth maps.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Motion estimation or compensation, e.g. details of vector based interview estimation and compensation.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**H04N 19/60**

using transform coding

**References**

**Informative references**

*Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fourier, Walsh or analogous domain transformations in general, e.g. implementation details of DCT or wavelet transforms</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>G06F 17/14</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Synonyms and Keywords**

*In patent documents, the following abbreviations are often used:*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Synonym</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DCT</td>
<td>Discrete Cosine Transform</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KLT</td>
<td>Karhunen-Loève Transform</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DST</td>
<td>Discrete Sine Transform</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FFT</td>
<td>Fast Fourier Transform</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WLT</td>
<td>Wavelet Transform</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MCTF</td>
<td>Motion Compensated Temporal Filtering</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EZW</td>
<td>Embedded Zerotrees of Wavelets</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*In patent documents, the following words/expressions are often used as synonyms:*

- "discrete cosine transform" and "cosine transform"
H04N 19/619
{the transform being operated outside the prediction loop}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Transform based predictive video coders of the type displayed in the figure below, i.e. where the transform is operated before or after the prediction loop.

![Diagram of video coder](image)

H04N 19/635
characterised by filter definition or implementation details

References
Informative references
Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Implementation details or hardware specially adapted for video compression or decompression | H04N 19/42 |

H04N 19/65
using error resilience

Definition statement
This place covers:
Techniques applied at the level of encoding the elementary video stream for the purpose of increasing the error resilience thereof.

References
Informative references
Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Systems for detection or correction of transmission errors in the transmission of television signals using pulse code modulation | H04N 19/89 |
| Selective content distribution, e.g. error resilience techniques for storage at video servers or for channel coding adapted to video distribution | H04N 21/00 |
Channel coding of digital bit-stream for video distribution

Coding, decoding or code conversion, e.g. for error correction in general

Arrangements for detecting or preventing errors in the information received, e.g. preventing errors by adapting the channel coding

**Glossary of terms**

In this place, the following terms or expressions are used with the meaning indicated:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Resynchronisation marker</td>
<td>A special Variable Length Coding binary word inserted to allow re-initialisation of VLC decoding, which is forced by the marker.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reversible Variable Length Coding</td>
<td>VLC allowing backward decoding of the stream, i.e. decoding of a VLC coded binary string starting from the end to the beginning.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Synonyms and Keywords**

In patent documents, the following abbreviations are often used:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Synonym</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Resync marker</td>
<td>Resynchronisation marker</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RVLC</td>
<td>Reversible Variable Length Coding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UEP</td>
<td>Unequal Error Protection</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**H04N 19/70**

characterised by syntax aspects related to video coding, e.g. related to compression standards

**Definition statement**

This place covers:

Subject matter wherein details about standards related coding syntax or about using the syntax in the coding process are provided, e.g. H.264 supplemental enhancement information [SEI], headers definitions, details of elementary stream parsing.

**Glossary of terms**

In this place, the following terms or expressions are used with the meaning indicated:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Syntax</td>
<td>The definition of the binary codes and values that make up a conforming elementary video bit stream.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Semantics</td>
<td>The definition of the meaning of the syntax and of the process flow for decoding the syntax elements to produce the digital video output.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Profile/Level</td>
<td>Operational level of a standard compliant decoder, which uses a predefined subset of the features defining the complete decoder according to the standard. The definition of the predefined subset falls also within the prescriptions of the standard.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
H04N 19/80
Details of filtering operations specially adapted for video compression, e.g. for pixel interpolation (H04N 19/635, H04N 19/86 take precedence)

Definition statement
This place covers:
Subject matter wherein a filtering operation specifically adapted to video compression is included but not necessarily adaptive in the video compression or decompression process, with details of the filtering operation provided.

References
Limiting references
This place does not cover:

| Filter definition or implementation for sub-band based transform | H04N 19/635 |
| Filtering for removal of coding artifacts | H04N 19/86 |

Informative references
Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Adaptive filtering operation | H04N 19/117 |
| Pre-processing or post-processing specially adapted for video compression | H04N 19/85 |
| Image filtering for image enhancement or restoration using local operators | G06T 5/20 |
| Impedance networks, e.g. resonant circuits, filters in general | H03H |

H04N 19/82
involving filtering within a prediction loop

Definition statement
This place covers:
• The insertion of the filtering within a prediction loop and details of such filter.
• This subgroup is of relevance, only if it contributes to define non trivial details of the filtering operation as in-loop filtering, regardless whether the filtering is adapted in the sense of H04N 19/117 or not.
References

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Adaptive filtering operation                  | H04N 19/117 |
| Filter definition or implementation for sub-band based transform | H04N 19/635 |

**H04N 19/85**

using pre-processing or post-processing specially adapted for video compression

Definition statement

This place covers:

- Subject matter wherein the pre or post processing operation is present as a functional block but not necessarily adaptive in the video coding process, e.g. the pre or post processing is respectively performed prior to the input of, or after the output of, the video coding process.
- This subgroup is of relevance, only if the subject-matter to be classified contributes to define non-trivial details of pre- or post-processing, regardless whether the filtering is adapted in the sense of H04N 19/117 or not.

References

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| In-loop filtering                          | H04N 19/82 |
**H04N 19/86**

involving reduction of coding artifacts, e.g. of blockiness

**Definition statement**

This place covers:

Processing techniques (e.g. filtering or interpolation in the spatial or in the temporal domain) adapted to reduce artefacts caused by digital video compression, e.g. blockiness from block-based transform compression, frame freeze or jerkiness from dropping frames at compression or transmission, false contours from limited bit depth resolution.

**References**

**Informative references**

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Circuitry for suppressing or minimising disturbance (e.g. moiré, halo) in television systems | H04N 5/21 |
| In-loop filtering | H04N 19/82 |
| Filtering or interpolation as an error concealment technique | H04N 19/895 |

**H04N 19/87**

involving scene cut or scene change detection in combination with video compression

**References**

**Informative references**

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Picture signal circuitry for video frequency region, e.g. circuitry for scene change detection in television systems. | H04N 5/14 |
| Scene cut detection in adaptive video coding | H04N 19/142 |

**H04N 19/88**

involving rearrangement of data among different coding units, e.g. shuffling, interleaving, scrambling or permutation of pixel data or permutation of transform coefficient data among different blocks

**Definition statement**

This place covers:

Techniques for the rearrangement of data among different coding units at the level of a single elementary video stream within the operation of the video coder, e.g. shuffling, interleaving, scrambling, permutation of pixel data or permutation of transform coefficient data among different blocks.
### References

#### Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Analogue secrecy systems in television systems</th>
<th>H04N 7/16</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Adaptive scanning of coding units</td>
<td>H04N 19/129</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Processing of video elementary streams for video distribution involving video stream encryption at the transmitter side</td>
<td>H04N 21/2347</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Processing of video elementary streams involving video stream decryption</td>
<td>H04N 21/4405</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Processing of video elementary streams involving video stream encryption at the receiver side</td>
<td>H04N 21/4408</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### H04N 19/89

**involving methods or arrangements for detection of transmission errors at the decoder**

#### Definition statement

This place covers:
- Techniques for detecting transmission errors at the digital video decoder and at the level of the elementary video stream.
- The subgroup H04N 19/895 covers details of detection in combination with error concealment.

#### References

#### Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Decoders specifically adapted for coding, decoding, compressing or decompressing digital video signals</th>
<th>H04N 19/44</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Methods or arrangements, for coding, decoding, compressing or decompressing digital video signals using error resilience</td>
<td>H04N 19/65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interfacing the downstream path of the transmission network originating from a server, e.g. channel decoding in selective content distribution</td>
<td>H04N 21/438</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monitoring of processes or resources, e.g. of downstream path of the transmission network at the receiver side</td>
<td>H04N 21/442</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monitoring of client processing errors or hardware failure in selective video distribution</td>
<td>H04N 21/4425</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Control signalling between network components and server or clients, e.g. monitoring network process errors by the network</td>
<td>H04N 21/647</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coding, decoding or code conversion for error detection or error correction in general</td>
<td>H03M 13/00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
H04N 19/90

using coding techniques not provided for in groups H04N 19/10-H04N 19/85, e.g. fractals

References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Method or arrangement</th>
<th>H04N reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Methods or arrangements, for coding, decoding, compressing or decompressing digital video signals</td>
<td>H04N 19/10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>using adaptive coding</td>
<td>H04N 19/10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>using video object coding</td>
<td>H04N 19/20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>using hierarchical techniques, e.g. scalability</td>
<td>H04N 19/30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>using video transcoding</td>
<td>H04N 19/40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Implementation details or hardware specially adapted for video compression or decompression</td>
<td>H04N 19/42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Decoders specifically adapted for coding, decoding, compressing or decompressing digital video signals</td>
<td>H04N 19/44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Embedding additional information in the video signal during the compression process</td>
<td>H04N 19/46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>using compressed domain processing techniques other than decoding</td>
<td>H04N 19/48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>using predictive coding</td>
<td>H04N 19/50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>using transform coding</td>
<td>H04N 19/60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>using error resilience</td>
<td>H04N 19/65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>characterised by syntax aspects related to video coding</td>
<td>H04N 19/70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Details of filtering operations specially adapted for video compression</td>
<td>H04N 19/80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pre-processing or post-processing specially adapted for video compression</td>
<td>H04N 19/85</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

H04N 19/91

Entropy coding, e.g. variable length coding [VLC] or arithmetic coding

Definition statement

This place covers:

Subject matter wherein the entropy coding is especially adapted to video compression, e.g. specifics of table entries for fixed and variable length coding, details of MPEG Huffman coding, details of H.264 arithmetic coding.

References

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adaptive entropy coding, e.g. adaptive variable length coding [AVLC] or context adaptive binary arithmetic coding [CABAC]</th>
<th>H04N 19/13</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Run-length coding for video compression</td>
<td>H04N 19/93</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Conversion to or from variable length codes in general  

**Synonyms and Keywords**

*In patent documents, the following abbreviations are often used:*

| VLCA | Variable Length Coding |

**H04N 19/93**

**Run-length coding**

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

- Subject matter wherein the run-length coding is especially adapted to video compression.
- In run-length coding a run, i.e. a sequence of identical data values, is coded by a representation of the data value together with the length of the sequence.

**References**

**Informative references**

*Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:*

| Variable length coding in an adaptive video coding process | H04N 19/13 |
| Conversion to or from run-length codes in general | H03M 7/46 |

**Synonyms and Keywords**

*In patent documents, the following abbreviations are often used:*

| RLE | Run-Length Encoding |

**H04N 19/94**

**Vector quantisation**

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

Video compression using vector quantisation, i.e. by dividing a large set of points into groups (vectors) having approximately the same number of points closest to them and by representing each group by a single code, which is associated with its centroid point.

**References**

**Informative references**

*Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:*

| Compression in general, e.g. vector coding | H03M 7/30 |
Synonyms and Keywords

In patent documents, the following abbreviations are often used:

| VQ | Vector Quantisation |

H04N 19/96

Tree coding, e.g. quad-tree coding

Definition statement

This place covers:

• Video compression using tree coding.

• Two-dimensional tree coding is called quad-tree coding and is performed by partitioning an image or a video frame by recursively subdividing it into four quadrants or regions, until each region may be represented by a single colour or code word, and coding the resulting tree data structure in which each internal node has exactly four children and each termination node (leaf) corresponds to a resulting region with the colour or code word associated to it, cf. R. Finkel and J.L. Bentley (1974). "Quad Trees: A Data Structure for Retrieval on Composite Keys". Acta Informatica 4 (1): 1–9.

• Tree coding in higher dimension is defined correspondingly (e.g. octree, performed in three-dimensions by subdivision into eight volumetric regions).

References

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Image coding using tree coding, e.g. quadtree, octree | G06T 9/40 |
H04N 19/97
Matching pursuit coding

Definition statement
This place covers:

Synonyms and Keywords
In patent documents, the following abbreviations are often used:

| MP | Matching Pursuit |

H04N 19/98
Adaptive-dynamic-range coding [ADRC]

Definition statement
This place covers:
The term "adaptive" in the "Adaptive-Dynamic-Range Coding" refers to the dynamic range being adaptive and not to the coding being adaptive, which is covered by H04N 19/10 and subgroups.
Synonyms and Keywords

In patent documents, the following abbreviations are often used:

| ADRC | Adaptive-Dynamic-Range Coding |

H04N 19/99
{involving fractal coding}

Definition statement

This place covers:


References

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Methods for coding digital video signals using vector quantisation | H04N 19/94 |

H04N 21/00

Selective content distribution, e.g. interactive television or video on demand [VOD] (real-time bi-directional transmission of motion video data H04N 7/14 {; broadcast or conference over packet switching networks H04L 12/18})

Definition statement

This place covers:

- Interactive video distribution processes, systems, or elements thereof, which are characterised by point-to-multipoint system configurations, and which are mainly used for motion video data unidirectional distribution or delivery resulting from interactions between systems operators, e.g. access or service providers, or users e.g. subscribers, and system elements
- Such systems include dedicated communication systems, such as television distribution systems, which primarily distribute or deliver motion video data in the manner indicated, which may, in addition, provide a framework for further, diverse data communications or services in either unidirectional or bi-directional form. However, video will occupy most of the downlink bandwidth in the distribution process.
- Typically, system operators interface with transmitter-side elements or users’ interface with receiver-side elements in order to facilitate, through interaction with such elements, the dynamic control of data processing or data flow at various points in the system. This interaction is typically occasional or intermittent in nature.
- Processes, systems or elements thereof specially adapted to the generation, distribution and processing of data, which is either associated with video content, e.g. metadata, ratings, or related to the user or his environment and which has been actively or passively gathered. This data is either used to facilitate interaction or to alter or target the content.

Relationships with other classification places

- H04N 21/00 is an application place for a large number of IT technologies, which are covered by the corresponding functional places
• Video servers and clients use internally specific computing techniques. Corresponding techniques used in general computing are found in G06F. This concerns data storage, software architectures, error detection or correction, monitoring, video retrieval, browsing, Internet browsing, computer security, billing or advertising.

• Video servers and clients use specific telecommunication techniques for the video distribution process. Corresponding techniques used in generic telecommunication networks are found in subclasses H04B, H04H, H04L, H04W. This concerns monitoring or testing of transmitters/receivers, synchronisation in time-division multiplex, broadcast or multicast, maintenance, administration, testing, data processing in data switching networks, home networks, real-time data network services, data network security, applications for data network, wireless networks per se.

References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

| Real-time bi-directional transmission of motion video data | H04N 7/14 |

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Synchronising circuits with arrangements for extending range of synchronisation at the transmitter end</th>
<th>H04N 5/067</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Television picture signal circuitry for Scene change detection</td>
<td>H04N 5/147</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reproduction of recorded television signals</td>
<td>H04N 5/76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interface circuits between an apparatus for recording television signals and a television receiver</td>
<td>H04N 5/775</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Television signal recording using magnetic recording on tape for reproducing at a rate different from the recording rate</td>
<td>H04N 5/783</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conversion of standards in analog television systems</td>
<td>H04N 7/01</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adaptations for transmission by electric cable for domestic distribution in television systems</td>
<td>H04N 7/106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Signal processing in analog two-way television systems</td>
<td>H04N 7/173</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reproduction of recorded television signals</td>
<td>H04N 9/79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diagnosis, testing or measuring for television receivers</td>
<td>H04N 17/04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Systems for the transmission of television signals using pulse code modulation using bandwidth reduction involving transcoding</td>
<td>H04N 19/40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flight-deck installations for entertainment or communications</td>
<td>B64D 11/0015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resetting in general</td>
<td>G06F 1/14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Constructional details of equipment or arrangements specially adapted for portable computer application</td>
<td>G06F 1/1626</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Power management in computer systems</td>
<td>G06F 1/3203</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Input arrangements for interaction with the human body based on nervous system activity detection</td>
<td>G06F 3/015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interaction techniques for graphical user interfaces</td>
<td>G06F 3/048</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Storage management</td>
<td>G06F 3/0604</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RAID arrays per se</td>
<td>G06F 3/0689</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interfaces to printers</td>
<td>G06F 3/12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Code</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G06F 3/1423</td>
<td>Digital output for controlling a plurality of local displays</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G06F 9/44, G06F 9/46</td>
<td>Software architectures; Program control</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G06F 11/00</td>
<td>Error detection or correction; Monitoring</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G06F 12/00</td>
<td>Addressing or allocating within memory systems or architectures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G06F 12/0862</td>
<td>Prefetching while addressing of a memory level in which the access to the desired data or data block requires associative addressing means within memory systems or architectures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G06F 16/70</td>
<td>Retrieval of video data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G06F 16/95</td>
<td>Retrieval from the web</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G06F 21/00</td>
<td>Computer security</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G06K 9/00221</td>
<td>Methods or arrangements for acquiring or recognising human faces, facial parts, facial sketches, facial expressions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G06K 9/00335</td>
<td>Methods or arrangements for recognising movements or behaviour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G06K 9/00362</td>
<td>Methods or arrangements for recognising human body or animal bodies or body parts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G06K 9/00624</td>
<td>Methods or arrangements for recognising scenes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G06K 15/02</td>
<td>Printing data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G06N 3/08</td>
<td>Computer systems using learning methods</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G06Q 20/00, G06Q 30/00</td>
<td>Billing; Advertising</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G06Q 30/02</td>
<td>Banking in general</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G06T 1/0021</td>
<td>Image watermarking in general</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G06T 5/00</td>
<td>Image enhancement or restoration in general</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G09G 5/005</td>
<td>Adapting incoming signals to the display format of the display terminal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G10L 19/167</td>
<td>Details of formatting and decoding of an encoded audio signal representation into a data stream for transmission or storage purposes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G10L 19/173</td>
<td>Details of audio signal transcoding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H04B 7/18526</td>
<td>Arrangements for data linking, networking or transporting, or for controlling an end to end session in a satellite broadcast system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H04B 10/114</td>
<td>Arrangements for wireless networking or broadcasting of information in indoor or near-field type systems</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H04B 17/00</td>
<td>Monitoring or testing of transmitters/receivers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H04H</td>
<td>Broadcast communication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H04J 3/06</td>
<td>Synchronisation in time-division multiplex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H04J 3/1682</td>
<td>Allocation of channels according to the instantaneous demands of the users in time-division multiplex systems</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H04L 1/0009</td>
<td>Arrangements for detecting or preventing errors in the information received by adapting the channel coding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H04L 1/18</td>
<td>ARQ protocols</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H04L 7/00</td>
<td>Arrangements for synchronising receiver with transmitter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H04L 7/0012</td>
<td>Arrangements for synchronising receiver with transmitter by comparing receiver clock with transmitter clock</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H04L 7/0083</td>
<td>Arrangements for synchronising receiver with transmitter wherein the receiver takes measures against momentary loss of synchronisation</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Special rules of classification

In this main group, the first place priority rule is applied, i.e. at each hierarchical level, in the absence of an indication to the contrary, classification is made in the first appropriate place.

- According to IPC rules, the full disclosure of the document is considered for classification. However, classification should be limited to:

  - Features providing a contribution to the invention or
  - Non-claimed features, which clearly stand out from what is well known in this field and are sufficiently disclosed (thus excludes features appearing only in a list of possible alternatives, e.g. the video client being a TV receiver, Set-Top-Box, PC, mobile phone, ..)

    - The scheme uses multi-dimensional classification, allowing to allocate symbols to describe a system. A short document focusing solely on one specific aspect may receive 1 or 2 symbols whereas a lengthy document with a very complex system architecture and a lot of non-trivial non-claimed features may receive 10-12 symbols

    - When a whole system is disclosed its structural and functional aspects should be described according to their location in the video distribution chain (entity model):

      | H04N 21/2x: |
      |---|---|
      | for details of servers or processes related to the reception of the content from the content provider or related to the distribution of content to clients. Network interfaces are included but not the communication aspects with clients |

      | H04N 21/4x: |
      |---|---|
      | for structural details of client devices or processes related among others to the processing, storing or displaying of the received content as well as user interfaces for accessing video services |

      | H04N 21/6x: |
      |---|---|
      | for the nature of the downlink / uplink or the exchange of control signals or data between clients, servers, network |
H04N 21/8x:

for specific multimedia content or processes taking place before distribution (usually by the content provider)
  • And independently according to their appropriate layer:

H04N 21/x[1-2]:

System architecture and topology

H04N 21/x[3-4]:

Functional and application aspects related to bit-stream processing or elementary operations

H04N 21/x[5-6]:

Functional and application aspects related to system management

H04N 21/x[7-8]:

Services and functionalities offered to the end-user
  • The classification scheme has thus a matrix structure and symbols taken from its different cells allow to classify the relevant aspects of a document as seen above.

Glossary of terms

In this place, the following terms or expressions are used with the meaning indicated:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Additional data</td>
<td>designates still pictures, textual, graphical or executable data such as software. It is used to convey supplemental information and can be generated prior to or during the distribution process itself, e.g. metadata, keys.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Content</td>
<td>designates video or audio streams, which may be combined with additional data. Video data will always be present and occupy most of the downlink bandwidth in the distribution process</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Server</td>
<td>designates an apparatus designed for adapting the content received from the content provider to the distribution network. It also manages the distribution to client devices or intermediate components over a network. Further servers may also be present for gathering or generating additional data, e.g. rights management server</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Additional data server</td>
<td>designates a server, which sole purpose is the distribution or management of additional data. It is not in charge of the distribution of video or audio data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Client</td>
<td>designates an apparatus such as a TV receiver, a set-top-box, a PC-TV, a mobile appliance (e.g. mobile phone or receiver in a vehicle), for receiving video, audio and possibly additional data from one or several servers or intermediate components via a network for further processing, storing or displaying. It can also transmit this data on a home-based local network to further devices, e.g. a home server transmitting video to PCs and set-top-boxes within a home.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Local network</td>
<td>pertains to a restricted area, e.g. a home or a vehicle, and designates the link between a client and its peripheral devices</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Network is to be distinguished from "local network": "network" designates the link between the server and the clients, or between the server and the intermediate components, or between the intermediate components and the clients, or between remotely located clients.

Distribution encompasses broadcasting, multicasting and unicasting techniques for transmitting content from one or more sources to one or more receiving stations. The distribution follows a request by a receiving station to the source, e.g. VOD or from a customization of the content by the source, e.g. targeting advertisements to a demographic group in a unidirectional or bidirectional system. Additionally, distribution encompasses techniques where the client acts as a source and another client acts as a receiving station, e.g. a peer-to-peer system for sharing video among client devices.

End-user designates a physical person, e.g. a TV viewer, who consumes the content using the client device. He is the final recipient of the content distributed by the server.

Interaction covers actions occurring between or among two or more objects that have an effect upon one another, wherein objects comprise users, system operators, system elements, or content. The user may interact with content locally at the client device, e.g. for requesting additional data stored within the client device. The user may interact with content remotely through a server e.g. for VOD playback control or for uploading video to a server. The client device may interact with the content e.g. selecting content based upon the user profile. The client device may interact with a server using a return channel, e.g. for authenticating client or uploading client hardware capabilities. The server may interact with a client device, e.g. to force a client to tune to an advertisement channel.

Upstream designates the direction of data flow towards the source, e.g. a server receiving a request via a mobile phone network.

Downstream designates the direction of data flow towards a client, e.g. a client receiving data originating from a server.

Elementary stream An elementary stream (ES) as defined by the MPEG communication protocol designates the output of an audio or video encoder.

**Synonyms and Keywords**

In patent documents, the following abbreviations are often used:

- **VOD** Video On Demand
- **SI** Service Information
- **IP** Internet Protocol
- **OS** Operating System
- **PCR** Program Clock References
- **STB** Set-top-box
- **PC** Personal Computer
- **PVR** Personal Video Recorder
- **GPS** Global Positioning System
H04N 21/00 (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ECM</td>
<td>Entitlement Control Message</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EMM</td>
<td>Entitlement Management Message</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ROI</td>
<td>Region Of Interest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PIN</td>
<td>Personal identification number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DSM-CC</td>
<td>Digital Storage Media - Command and Control Protocol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RTP</td>
<td>Real-time Transport Protocol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UMID</td>
<td>Unique Material Identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MHEG</td>
<td>Hypermedia information coding Expert Group</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XML</td>
<td>eXtensible Markup Language</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**H04N 21/20**

Servers specifically adapted for the distribution of content, e.g. VOD servers; Operations thereof

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

Subject matter comprising methods and components in the main broadcast server, headend, video-on-demand server, or server associated with the headend/video-on-demand server, which includes services, management and operations performed on the bitstream for distribution to client devices or an intermediate component over a network. The server adapts the content received from the content provider to the distribution network and only provides a network interface. Addressing issues and the exchange of control signals with the clients or the network are placed by definition in the T-model. The first layer of this subgroup pertains to the physical description of the server, e.g. its internal components, the sources of the content. The server may consist of a single physical entity or of a plurality of interconnected sub-servers. The second layer is directed to elementary specialized functions such as the storage and retrieval of the content, the processing of the elementary multimedia streams, the multiplexing thereof, the insertion of additional data, the processing of the data at the downstream and upstream network interfaces (e.g. channel coding, network adaptation, handling of clients requests), the monitoring of internal processes, e.g. server load, or of network interfaces, e.g. downstream bandwidth. The third layer describes the management of the content and of the system, such as client device or user management, scheduling issues e.g. according to bandwidth or billing policies, creation of virtual channels, management of services not directly linked to the distribution of multimedia content, e.g. billing, shopping, rights. The last layer is directed to data services directly accessible by the user, such as hosting of private data. The subgroup is directed to documents related to the insertion of server related data into a signal, such as time information inserted into EPG information. Raw multimedia data per se, is placed in H04N 21/80. The subgroup is directed to documents related to server functions, such as transmitting data to the user however, server characteristics initiated or performed on behalf of a user request is placed in the H04N 21/60. Examples of documents placed in the S-model (1) This subgroup is directed towards a server, which could be the source of additional information related to the World Wide Web. (2) This subgroup is directed towards alteration of the scene composition in regards to video objects (e.g. MPEG-2 or MPEG-4 objects). (3) This subgroup is directed towards multiplexing of video and audio streams for transmission. (4) This subgroup is directed towards the distribution of video data throughout a dwelling where the user is unaware of other users (e.g. a Hotel, Airplane or Train). Systems that provide video distribution within a dwelling where the user is aware of other users (e.g. a home gateway) is classified elsewhere. (5) This subgroup is directed to local storage built into (or next to) the server (H04N 21/218) and placement of the data onto the local storage device (H04N 21/231) (note: this is typically used in a VOD environment). Systems which are concerned about the specific details of storage or recording of video data, where the claimed invention is directed to how the video is stored or recorded (e.g. placement of the recording heads within a local storage device on a server), are
classified elsewhere. (6) The subgroup is directed to documents related to the insertion of server related data into a signal, such as time information inserted into EPG information.

References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

| Streaming audio/video via internet | H04N 21/6125 |
| Generation of the timestamps used for synchronization purposes | H04N 21/8547 |
| URLs sent in the video signal | H04N 21/8586 |

H04N 21/21

Server components or server architectures

Definition statement

This place covers:

Physical description of the multimedia server. As most of the components are always present (e.g. modulator, memory), a symbol should be allocated only if one of the component has a critical function in the invention. It should be further noted, that most of the components have already an entry in other technical fields and that for example the circuitry of a modulator is not part of this model. The server is used to distribute the content in a very limited geographical area, such as a single building. It is localized in the same building. It can be for example a hotel or hospital. The server and clients are localized in a movable object, such as an aircraft, a train or a bus.

H04N 21/214

Specialised server platform, e.g. server located in an airplane, hotel, hospital {arrangements specially adapted for local area broadcast systems H04H 20/61)

Definition statement

This place covers:

Servers been specially adapted to systems located in a confined environment.

References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

| Arrangements specially adapted for local area broadcast systems | H04H 20/61 |
**H04N 21/2143**

{located in a single building, e.g. hotel, hospital or museum (arrangements specially adapted for plural spots in a confined site in broadcast systems H04H 20/63; adaptations for transmission by electric cable for domestic distribution in television systems H04N 7/106)}

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

The server is used to distribute the content in a very limited geographical area, such as a single building. It is localized in the same building. It can be for example a hotel, multiple dwelling units, hospital or museum, movie theater if serving different projection rooms.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: GB2411329

**References**

**Limiting references**

*IThis place does not cover:*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adaptations for transmission by electric cable for domestic distribution in television systems</th>
<th>H04N 7/106</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Arrangements specially adapted for plural spots in a confined site in broadcast systems</td>
<td>H04H 20/63</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**H04N 21/2146**

{located in mass transportation means, e.g. aircraft, train or bus (flight-deck installations for entertainment or communications B64D 11/0015; arrangements specially adapted for transportation systems in broadcast systems H04H 20/62; moving wireless networks H04W 84/005)}

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

Server and clients are localized in a movable object, such as an aircraft, a train or a bus.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: EP1903800

**References**

**Limiting references**

*IThis place does not cover:*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Flight-deck installations for entertainment or communications</th>
<th>B64D 11/0015</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Arrangements specially adapted for transportation systems in broadcast systems</td>
<td>H04H 20/62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moving wireless networks</td>
<td>H04W 84/005</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
H04N 21/218
Source of audio or video content {, e.g. local disk arrays (details of retrieval in video databases G06F 16/739)}

Definition statement
This place covers:
The source, from which the multimedia server accesses the multimedia content.

References
Limiting references
This place does not cover:

| Details of retrieval in video databases | G06F 16/70 |

H04N 21/21805
{enabling multiple viewpoints, e.g. using a plurality of cameras}

Definition statement
This place covers:
  • The same scene shot by different cameras under different angles.
  • Panoramic video.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: GB2355137

H04N 21/2181
{comprising remotely distributed storage units, e.g. when movies are replicated over a plurality of video servers (distributed storage of data in a network H04L 29/08549)}

Definition statement
This place covers:
The source located remotely, like in other video servers, when all available movies are distributed over a plurality of video servers of same importance.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: WO0158163

References
Limiting references
This place does not cover:

| Systems involving a hierarchy between servers | H04N 21/222 |
| Distributed storage of data in a network      | H04L 29/08549 |
H04N 21/21815
{comprising local storage units}

Definition statement
This place covers:
The video source is built into the server or next to it. It is typical for a VOD server. Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US2003229684

H04N 21/2182
{involving memory arrays, e.g. RAID disk arrays (RAID arrays per se G06F 3/0689; use of parity to protect data in RAID systems G06F 11/1008)}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Videos stored on disk arrays.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US6587640

References
Limiting references
This place does not cover:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>RAID arrays per se</th>
<th>G06F 3/0689</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Use of parity to protect data in RAID systems</td>
<td>G06F 11/1008</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

H04N 21/21825
{involving removable storage units, e.g. tertiary storage such as magnetic tapes or optical disks}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Videos retrieved from magnetic or optical tapes.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: WO9935562, XP001159230

H04N 21/2183
Cache memory {(caches in web servers or browsers G06F 16/9574; intermediate storage and caching in data networks H04L 29/08801)}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Physical aspects of the cache.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: EP1315091
References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Classification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Caching operation on the server side</td>
<td>H04N 21/23106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Caches in web servers or browsers</td>
<td>G06F 16/9574</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intermediate storage and caching in data networks</td>
<td>H04L 29/08801</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

H04N 21/2187

Live feed

Definition statement

This place covers:
Live feeds from cameras, or satellite at a headend.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US2007216783

H04N 21/222

Secondary servers, e.g. proxy server, cable television Head-end {(intermediate processing or storage in data networks H04L 29/08702)}

Definition statement

This place covers:
• Local servers for serving mobile terminals.
• The concept of secondary server is used to describe a hierarchy among several servers, as for example in distributed systems.

References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Classification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Intermediate processing or storage in data networks</td>
<td>H04L 29/08702</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Glossary of terms

In this place, the following terms or expressions are used with the meaning indicated:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Secondary server</td>
<td>A server belonging to a hierarchy of servers, e.g. servers forming part of distributed systems or local servers for serving mobile terminals</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**H04N 21/2221**

{being a cable television head-end (CATV in broadcast systems H04H 20/78)}

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

Local server in a broadcast system.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US7269841

**References**

**Limiting references**

*This place does not cover:*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CATV in broadcast systems</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>H04H 20/78</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**H04N 21/2223**

{being a public access point, e.g. for downloading to or uploading from clients (arrangements specially adapted to plural spots in a confined site in broadcast systems H04H 20/63)}

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

Public access point, where content can be downloaded to / uploaded from clients. Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: WO0150401

**References**

**Limiting references**

*This place does not cover:*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Arrangements specially adapted to plural spots in a confined site in broadcast systems</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>H04H 20/63</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**H04N 21/2225**

Local VOD servers

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

Local VOD server to serve a small area.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: EP0740470
**H04N 21/226**

{Characteristics of the server or} Internal components of the server

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US2003026280

**H04N 21/2265**

{Server identification by a unique number or address, e.g. serial number (addressing and naming in data networks H04L 29/12009)}

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

Identification number of the server. It can be used for authenticating the server.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: WO2006101380

**References**

*Limiting references*

*This place does not cover:*

| Addressing and naming in data networks | H04L 29/12009 |

**H04N 21/23**

Processing of content or additional data; Elementary server operations; Server middleware

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

Elementary specialized functions. They can be implemented in software or hardware. Their task is to control the corresponding hardware component and to provide a service to the upper layer. e.g. network synchronization using a master clock for downstream/upstream transmissions. Synchronization of transmitters.

**References**

*Limiting references*

*This place does not cover:*

| Handling or recovery of errors occurring in the server | H04N 21/2404 |
H04N 21/231
Content storage operation, e.g. caching movies for short term storage, replicating data over plural servers, prioritizing data for deletion

Definition statement
This place covers:
Organization and the action of storage as well as writing actions. Storage can be performed in disk arrays as found in VOD servers as well as internal databases, caching of movies or data or any memory related problem.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US 7,017,174 B1

References
Limiting references
This place does not cover:

| Retrieving and reading data in the server | H04N 21/232 |
| Server-side memory management | H04N 21/241 |

H04N 21/23103
{using load balancing strategies, e.g. by placing or distributing content on different disks, different memories or different servers (storage management G06F 3/0604; allocation of resources considering the load in multiprogramming arrangements G06F 9/505; techniques for rebalancing the load in a distributed system G06F 9/5083; access to distributed or replicated servers, e.g. load balancing, in data networks H04L 29/08144)}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Methods describing the placement or distribution of content on different disks or different servers with the aim of providing a balanced load within the (distributed) system.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US 2004/0202444 A1

References
Limiting references
This place does not cover:

| Data replication on different disks or servers | H04N 21/23116 |
| Storage management | G06F 3/0604 |
| Allocation of resources considering the load in multiprogramming arrangements | G06F 9/505 |
| Techniques for rebalancing the load in a distributed system | G06F 9/5083 |
| Access to distributed or replicated servers, e.g. load balancing, in data networks | H04L 29/08144 |
H04N 21/23106
{involving caching operations (prefetching while addressing of a memory level in which the access to the desired data or data block requires associative addressing means within memory systems or architectures G06F 12/0862; caching at an intermediate stage in a data network H04L 29/08801)}

Definition statement

This place covers:
Caching action, for example of movies in a local VOD server. The storage has a temporary aspect and must be distinguished from buffering as performed in the video encoder which holds the multimedia data for a brief period of time.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US 2002/0169926 A1

References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

| Buffering on the encoder side | H04N 21/23406 |
| Prefetching while addressing of a memory level in which the access to the desired data or data block requires associative addressing means within memory systems or architectures | G06F 12/0862 |
| Caching at an intermediate stage in a data network | H04L 29/08801 |

H04N 21/23109
{by placing content in organized collections, e.g. EPG data repository (details of retrieval of video data and associated meta data in video databases G06F 16/739)}

Definition statement

This place covers:
Details of the generation and the management of a local database because it is trivial that local data are always stored in some kind of database (from simple lists to complex structures).

References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

| Details of retrieval of video data and associated meta data in video databases | G06F 16/71 |
H04N 21/23113
{involving housekeeping operations for stored content, e.g. prioritizing content for deletion because of storage space restrictions (storage management, e.g. defragmentation G06F 3/0604; unloading stored programs G06F 9/445; housekeeping operations in file systems, e.g. deletion policies G06F 16/10; buffering arrangements in a network node or in an end terminal in packet networks H04L 49/90)}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Algorithms, describing which data are prioritized for deletion (e.g. oldest or less used data) are classified here.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US 2002/0169926 A1

References
Limiting references
This place does not cover:

| Storage management, e.g. defragmentation | G06F 3/0604 |
| Unloading stored programs | G06F 9/445 |
| Housekeeping operations in file systems, e.g. deletion policies | G06F 16/10 |
| Buffering arrangements in a network node or in an end terminal in packet networks | H04L 49/90 |

H04N 21/23116
{involving data replication, e.g. over plural servers (synchronization of replicated data G06F 11/1658; error detection or correction by means of data replication G06F 11/2053; replication in distributed file systems G06F 16/10; replication in distributed file systems G06F 16/27; replication or mirroring of data in data networks H04L 29/0854)}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Content replicated over different servers or over different hard disks.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US 2004/0202444 A1

References
Limiting references
This place does not cover:

| Synchronization of replicated data | G06F 11/1658 |
| Error detection or correction by means of data replication | G06F 11/2053 |
| Replication in distributed file systems | G06F 16/10 |
| Replication in distributed file systems | G06F 16/27 |
Replication or mirroring of data in data networks

H04N 21/2312
Data placement on disk arrays {(data placement in general G06F 3/0604)}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Data block placement strategies in the disk array of video servers.
Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: EP 1 028 587 A2

References
Limiting references
This place does not cover:
Data placement in general

G06F 3/0604

H04N 21/2315
using interleaving

Definition statement
This place covers:
• Successive file blocks stored on different disks.
• A whole sector localized on one disk only.

H04N 21/2318
using striping

Definition statement
This place covers:
A data sector distributed over several disks (RAID technology).

Glossary of terms
In this place, the following terms or expressions are used with the meaning indicated:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>RAID</td>
<td>Redundant array of independent disks. A storage technology that combines multiple disk drive components into a logical unit</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**H04N 21/232**

Content retrieval operation {locally} within server, e.g. reading video streams from disk arrays {{storage management G06F 3/0604; details of querying and searching of video data from a database G06F 16/739}}

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

Operations linked to the retrieval of the multimedia stream from the disks. It covers disk scheduling and file mapping

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US 2007/0172205 A1

**References**

**Limiting references**

*This place does not cover:*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Content storage</th>
<th>H04N 21/231</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Storage management</td>
<td>G06F 3/0604</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Details of querying and searching of video data from a database</td>
<td>G06F 16/73</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**H04N 21/2323**

{using file mapping}

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: EP 0 992 992 A1

**H04N 21/2326**

{Scheduling disk or memory reading operations}

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US 2004/0186951 A1

**H04N 21/233**

Processing of audio elementary streams {(monitoring, identification or recognition of audio in broadcast systems H04H 60/58)}

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

Audio stream management.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: FR 2 850 821 A1
References

Limiting references
This place does not cover:

| Monitoring, identification or recognition of audio in broadcast systems | H04H 60/58 |

Informative references
Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Details of formatting and decoding of an encoded audio signal representation into a data stream for transmission or storage purposes | G10L 19/167 |

H04N 21/233

{involving reformatting operations of audio signals, e.g. by converting from one coding standard to another (details of audio signal transcoding G10L 19/173)}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Reformatted audio stream, e.g. by converting from one coding standard to another.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US 2004/0013270 A1

References

Limiting references
This place does not cover:

| Details of audio signal transcoding | G10L 19/173 |

H04N 21/234

Processing of video elementary streams, e.g. splicing of video streams, manipulating MPEG-4 scene graphs

Definition statement
This place covers:
- Video stream management.
- The control of the encoder, video scaling and transcoding aspects, synchronization, interactive control of playback, composition of MPEG-4 objects or embedding of graphics or text.

References

Limiting references
This place does not cover:

| Embedding | H04N 21/23892 |
**Informative references**

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Video encoding or transcoding processes per se | H04N 19/00 |
| Processing of video elementary streams, e.g. splicing a video clip retrieved from local storage with an incoming video stream or rendering scenes according to MPEG-4 scene graphs | H04N 21/44 |

**H04N 21/23406**

{involving management of server-side video buffer}

**Definition statement**

This place covers:

Buffer level control.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US 2006/0193350 A1, US 2006/0262813 A1

**H04N 21/23412**

{for generating or manipulating the scene composition of objects, e.g. MPEG-4 objects}

**Definition statement**

This place covers:

Spatial composition of MPEG-4 objects at the program generation using a scene graph.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US 2003/0110297 A1, US2006222071

**References**

**Limiting references**

This place does not cover:

Scene rendering using a scene graph | H04N 21/44012

**H04N 21/23418**

{involving operations for analysing video streams, e.g. detecting features or characteristics (filtering for image enhancement G06T 5/00; methods or arrangements for recognising scenes G06K 9/00624; arrangements characterised by components specially adapted for monitoring, identification or recognition of video in broadcast systems H04H 60/59; television picture signal circuitry for scene change detection H04N 5/147)}

**Definition statement**

This place covers:

Detection of features (e.g. logo) in a video stream, extraction of characteristics directly from the video stream.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: EP 1 301 039 A2
References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>CPC</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Television picture signal circuitry for Scene change detection</td>
<td>H04N 5/147</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Methods or arrangements for recognising scenes</td>
<td>G06K 9/00624</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Image analysis per se</td>
<td>G06T 7/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arrangements characterised by components specially adapted for monitoring, identification or recognition of video in broadcast systems</td>
<td>H04H 60/59</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

H04N 21/23424

{involving splicing one content stream with another content stream, e.g. for inserting or substituting an advertisement}

Definition statement

This place covers:

Splicing of at least one video stream with another stream (video or not) at the server level. It can be used for inserting or substituting a piece of video such as a commercial.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US 2007/0033633 A1, XP 2098561 A1

H04N 21/2343

involving reformatting operations of video signals for distribution or compliance with end-user requests or end-user device requirements {(media manipulation, adaptation or conversion at the source in one way streaming for real-time multimedia communications H04L 29/06489; video transcoding H04N 19/40)}

Definition statement

This place covers:

The original A/V stream received from the content provider is reformatted. The output format is defined here.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US 2008/001791 A1

References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>CPC</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Details of conversion of video standards at pixel level</td>
<td>H04N 7/01</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Video transcoding</td>
<td>H04N 19/40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Media manipulation, adaptation or conversion at the source in one way streaming for real-time multimedia communications</td>
<td>H04L 29/06489</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**H04N 21/234309**

{by transcoding between formats or standards, e.g. from MPEG-2 to MPEG-4 or from Quicktime to Realvideo (conversion of standards in analog television systems H04N 7/01)}

**Definition statement**

This place covers:
Transcoding between standards (e.g. MPEG-2 to MPEG-4) or between format such as Quicktime to Realvideo.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US 6,747,706 B1

**References**

**Limiting references**

This place does not cover:

| Conversion of standards in analog television systems | H04N 7/01 |

**H04N 21/234318**

{by decomposing into objects, e.g. MPEG-4 objects}

**Definition statement**

This place covers:
The components have been coded according to MPEG-4 and become objects.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US2006221178

**H04N 21/234327**

{by decomposing into layers, e.g. base layer and one or more enhancement layers}

**Definition statement**

This place covers:
- Content divided in layers (e.g. base layer and one or more enhancement layers).
- MDC (multiple description coding).

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: WO2009002303

**H04N 21/234336**

{by media transcoding, e.g. video is transformed into a slideshow of still pictures or audio is converted into text}

**Definition statement**

This place covers:
- Transcoding between modalities (e.g. audio to text).
- Slideshow of still pictures transformed in a video.
Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US 2008/0163317 A1

**H04N 21/234345**

{the reformatting operation being performed only on part of the stream, e.g. a region of the image or a time segment}

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

The reformatting operation is performed on part of the stream, the part being spatial region of the image or a time segment.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US 2002/0080878 A1

**H04N 21/234354**

{by altering signal-to-noise ratio parameters, e.g. requantization}

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

- New quantization parameters are introduced allowing to change the resolution of each video frame.
- Degradation of the signal by addition of noise.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US 2002/0152317 A1

**H04N 21/234363**

{by altering the spatial resolution, e.g. for clients with a lower screen resolution}

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

The server provides a video with a spatial resolution commensurate with, e.g. the display capabilities of the client

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US 2006/0039478 A1

**H04N 21/234372**

{for performing aspect ratio conversion}

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

Server reformat video to alter aspect ratio, e.g. between 4:3 and 16:9

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: EP 1 679 893 A2
H04N 21/234381
(by altering the temporal resolution, e.g. decreasing the frame rate by frame skipping)

Definition statement
This place covers:
Alteration of the frame rate.
Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US 6,510,554 B1

H04N 21/23439
(for generating different versions)

Definition statement
This place covers:
Different versions of the same audio/video stream are created and stored for later immediate retrieval.
Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: EP 1 796 394 A2

H04N 21/2347
involving video stream encryption

Definition statement
This place covers:
- Scrambling of the video stream, encryption of the content stream.
- Scrambling of multimedia content in general.
Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US 2002/0085734 A1

References
Limiting references
This place does not cover:

| Multiplex stream encryption in the server | H04N 21/23895 |
| Arrangements using cryptography for the use of broadcast information or broadcast-related information | H04H 60/23 |

Informative references
Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Analogue secrecy systems | H04N 7/16 |
| Arrangements for secret or secure communication | H04L 9/00 |
| Arrangements for preventing the taking of data from a data transmission channel without authorisation | H04L 12/22 |
| Security arrangements in wireless networks | H04W 12/00 |
H04N 21/23473
{by pre-encrypting}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Covering encryption of content before storage in a (VOD) server, also known as off-line encryption.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: WO0215578

H04N 21/23476
{by partially encrypting, e.g. encrypting the ending portion of a movie}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Not all of the signal is scrambled or different parts are encrypted differently, e.g. to reduce processor load or to enable a reduced quality presentation.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US 2003/0021412 A1

H04N 21/235
Processing of additional data, e.g. scrambling of additional data or processing content descriptors

Definition statement
This place covers:
Insertion of software modules and additional data in the video stream. The specific nature of the additional data is not considered.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US 6,636,890 B1

References
Limiting references
This place does not cover:

| Calculation of the repetition rate and of the timing of insertion of additional data by the server-side scheduler | H04N 21/262 |
| Processing of additional data on the client side | H04N 21/435 |

Informative references
Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Arrangements for simultaneous | H04H 20/28 |
H04N 21/2351
{involving encryption of additional data (arrangements using cryptography for the use of broadcast information or broadcast-related information H04H 60/23)}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: WO 2005/013126 A1

References
Limiting references
This place does not cover:

| Arrangements using cryptography for the use of broadcast information or broadcast-related information | H04H 60/23 |

H04N 21/2353
{specifically adapted to content descriptors, e.g. coding, compressing or processing of metadata}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Coding/compression or more generally modification of additional data associated with the content.
Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: EP2037684

H04N 21/2355
{involving reformatting operations of additional data, e.g. HTML pages (optimising the visualization of content for information retrieval from the Internet G06F 16/9577; media manipulation, adaptation or conversion at the source in one way streaming for real-time multimedia communications H04L 29/06489; message adaptation based on network or terminal capabilities in stored and forward packet switching H04L 51/34)}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Additional informations such as an HTML page are reformatted by the server. Translation in a different language.
Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: WO 02/071264 A2

References
Limiting references
This place does not cover:

| Optimising the visualization of content for information retrieval from the Internet | G06F 16/9577 |
H04N 21/2356
{by altering the spatial resolution}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Modified resolution of the additional information. It can be used, e.g. to reformat additional data for different destination client devices.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: WO 02/33976 A1

H04N 21/2358
{for generating different versions, e.g. for different recipient devices}

Definition statement
This place covers:
The server generates at least one other version of the original additional data, which is available together with the orginal version.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: EP 1 860 880 A2

H04N 21/236
Assembling of a multiplex stream, e.g. transport stream, by combining a video stream with other content or additional data, e.g. inserting a URL [Uniform Resource Locator] into a video stream, multiplexing software data into a video stream; Remultiplexing of multiplex streams; Insertion of stuffing bits into the multiplex stream, e.g. to obtain a constant bit-rate; Assembling of a packetised elementary stream {(multiplexing of data packets for data networks, e.g. RTP/UDP H04L 65/00)}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Transport stream generation. Takes as input video or audio streams or already multiplexed AV stream (remultiplexing) and outputs a single Transport Stream.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: EP 1 363 439 A1

References
Limiting references
This place does not cover:

| Multiplexing of data packets for data networks | H04L 65/00 |
H04N 21/23602
{Multiplexing isochronously with the video sync, e.g. according to bit-parallel or bit-serial interface formats, as SDI}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: EP 0 777 383 A1

H04N 21/23608
{Remultiplexing multiplex streams, e.g. involving modifying time stamps or remapping the packet identifiers}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Modification of bitstream parameters, e.g. restamping, transmultiplexing, remapping of PIDs.
Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: XP 2040478 A1

H04N 21/23611
{Insertion of stuffing data into a multiplex stream, e.g. to obtain a constant bitrate (synchronisation arrangements in time-division multiplex systems using bit stuffing for systems with different or fluctuating information rates H04J 3/073)}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Insertion of stuffing bits/bytes/packets in the packetised stream to e.g. obtain a constant bitrate.
Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US 2004/0008736 A1

References
Limiting references
This place does not cover:

Synchronisation arrangements in time-division multiplex systems using bit stuffing for systems with different or fluctuating information rates

H04N 21/23614
{Multiplexing of additional data and video streams (arrangements for simultaneous broadcast of plural pieces of information H04H 20/28)}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Multiplexing in an MPEG stream according to the DVB standard or generally speaking, insertion of additional data in the streaming of a digital TV system.
Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US 6,976,266 B1
## References

**Limiting references**

*This place does not cover:*

| Arrangements for simultaneous broadcast of plural pieces of information | H04H 20/28 |

---

### H04N 21/23617

{by inserting additional data into a data carousel, e.g. inserting software modules into a DVB carousel (arrangements for broadcast or for distribution of identical information repeatedly in broadcast distribution systems H04H 20/16)}

#### Definition statement

*This place covers:*

- Insertion in a DVB carousel.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: WO 2004/082289 A1

---

### H04N 21/2362

**Generation or processing of Service Information [SI]**

#### Definition statement

*This place covers:*

- Generation of MPEG SI and PSI tables.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: EP 0 917 370 A2

---

### H04N 21/2365

**Multiplexing of several video streams**

#### Definition statement

*This place covers:*

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US 2006/0018379 A1
H04N 21/23655

{Statistical multiplexing, e.g. by controlling the encoder to alter its bitrate to optimize the bandwidth utilization}

Definition statement
This place covers:
The typical structure of a stat mux is a multiplexer which sends command signals back to the video coder(s) to make them change parameters (e.g. bitrate) so as to optimise the global use of the bandwidth.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: EP 0 928 115 A1

H04N 21/2368

Multiplexing of audio and video streams

Definition statement
This place covers:
Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US 2007/0237187 A1

References
Limiting references
This place does not cover:

| Generation of timestamps for synchronization purposes | H04N 21/8547 |

H04N 21/237

Communication with additional data server

Definition statement
This place covers:
Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: WO 9953689 A1

H04N 21/238

Interfacing the downstream path of the transmission network, e.g. adapting the transmission rate of a video stream to network bandwidth; Processing of multiplex streams {(hybrid Fiber Coaxial HFC networks for downstream channel allocation for video distribution H04L 12/2801; formation of RTP packets H04L 29/06176; application layer Quality of Service and content dependent routing H04L 29/08945; flow control in packet networks H04L 47/10)}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Processing the transport stream after its assembly and sending it over the network.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US 2008/0229365 A1, WO 002/5219 A1
H04N 21/23805

{Controlling the feeding rate to the network, e.g. by controlling the video pump}

Definition statement
This place covers:
The video pump is responsible for feeding the program content to the network at the correct data rate, for example after having received a control signal from the network.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US 2006/0262813 A1

References

Limiting references
This place does not cover:

Video streams retrieval

H04N 21/2381

Adapting the multiplex stream to a specific network, e.g. an Internet Protocol [IP] network {(transmission of MPEG streams over ATM H04L 12/5601)}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Bitstream adapted to a specific network. The type of network or protocol used is classified elsewhere.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: EP 1 953 936 A2

References

Limiting references
This place does not cover:

Transmission of MPEG streams over ATM

H04L 12/5601
**H04N 21/2383**

Channel coding (or modulation) of digital bit-stream, e.g. QPSK modulation (arrangements for detecting or preventing errors in the information received by adapting the channel coding [H04L 1/0009]; analogue front ends or means for connecting modulators, demodulators or transceivers to a transmission line [H04L 27/0002])

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

Protection of the digital bitstream (e.g. RS coding) and modulation.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US 6,591,391 B1

**References**

**Limiting references**

*This place does not cover:*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>CPC Code</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Arrangements for detecting or preventing errors in the information received</td>
<td>H04L 1/0009</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Analogue front ends or means for connecting modulators, demodulators or</td>
<td>H04L 27/0002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>transceivers to a transmission line</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**H04N 21/2385**

Channel allocation ([H04N 21/266](#) takes precedence); Bandwidth allocation ([H04N 21/24](#) takes precedence {; allocation of channels according to the instantaneous demands of the users in time-division multiplex systems [H04J 3/1682]; admission control, resource allocation in open networks [H04L 12/5692]; arrangements for maintenance or administration in data switching networks involving bandwidth and capacity management [H04L 41/0896]; negotiating bandwidth in wireless networks [H04W 28/16])

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

Channel and bandwidth allocation.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: WO 03/088667 A1

**References**

**Limiting references**

*This place does not cover:*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>CPC Code</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Allocation of channels according to the instantaneous demands of the users</td>
<td>H04J 3/1682</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in time-division multiplex systems</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Admission control, resource allocation in open networks</td>
<td>H04L 12/5692</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arrangements for maintenance or administration in data switching networks</td>
<td>H04L 41/0896</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>involving bandwidth and capacity management</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Negotiating bandwidth in wireless networks</td>
<td>H04W 28/16</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**H04N 21/2387**

Stream processing in response to a playback request from an end-user, e.g. for trick-play

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

Management of the video stream after receiving an upstream playback control signal from the client, for example in a VOD system to pause or ffwd the video stream.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US 5864682 A1

**H04N 21/2389**

Multiplex stream processing, e.g. multiplex stream encrypting

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

Processing of the transport stream as received from the network and before being adapted to the delivery medium.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US 2007/0217452 A1

**H04N 21/23892**

{involving embedding information at multiplex stream level, e.g. embedding a watermark at packet level}

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

- Embedding of data in a piece of content, for example picture, text in a video.
- The operations performed by a content provider at a workstation to create an interactive multimedia presentation.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: EP1255249

**H04N 21/23895**

{involving multiplex stream encryption}

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

Only the descrambling/decrypting of the transport stream is described here. The descrambling/decrypting of the video stream is described elsewhere.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US 2008/0075285 A1
**H04N 21/23897**

{by partially encrypting, e.g. encrypting only the ending portion of a movie}

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US 2007/0160218 A1

**H04N 21/239**

Interfacing the upstream path of the transmission network, e.g. prioritizing client {content} requests (hybrid Fiber Coaxial [HFC] networks for upstream channel allocation for video distribution H04L 12/2801; formation of RTP packets H04L 29/06176; application layer Quality of Service and content dependent routing of client requests H04L 29/08945; flow control in data networks H04L 47/10)

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

This interface manages the uplink signals coming from all the clients and is used for example to handle requests (e.g requests for a particular multimedia service).

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US 2003/0028897 A1

**References**

**Limiting references**

*This place does not cover:*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>CPC Classification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hybrid Fiber Coaxial [HFC] networks for upstream channel allocation for video distribution</td>
<td>H04L 12/2801</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Formation of RTP packets</td>
<td>H04L 29/06176</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Application layer Quality of Service and content dependent routing of client requests</td>
<td>H04L 29/08945</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flow control in data networks</td>
<td>H04L 47/10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**H04N 21/2393**

{involving handling client requests (scheduling and organising the servicing of requests in data switching networks H04L 29/08945)}

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US 2002/0078218 A1
References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>CPC Code</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Scheduling and organising the servicing of requests in data switching networks</td>
<td>H04L 29/08945</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

H04N 21/2396

{characterized by admission policies (admission control, resource allocation in open networks H04L 12/5692; arrangements for network security using user profiles for access control H04L 29/06836; access security in wireless networks H04W 12/08)}

Definition statement

This place covers:

Admission policies of clients in video servers.

References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>CPC Code</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Admission control, resource allocation in open networks</td>
<td>H04L 12/5692</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arrangements for network security using user profiles for access control</td>
<td>H04L 29/06836</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Access security in wireless networks</td>
<td>H04W 12/08</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

H04N 21/24

Monitoring of processes or resources, e.g. monitoring of server load, available bandwidth, upstream requests {(monitoring of server performance or load G06F 11/34; arrangements for observation, testing or troubleshooting for broadcast or for distribution combined with broadcast H04H 20/12)}

Definition statement

This place covers:

Monitoring is an internal process, which checks permanently user requests, the bandwidth available at the different network interfaces or any internal processes. It can generate reports of system usage.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US 2008/0270598 A1

References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>CPC Code</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Monitoring of server performance or load</td>
<td>G06F 11/34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monitoring or testing of transmitters in general</td>
<td>H04B 17/10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arrangements for observation, testing or troubleshooting for broadcast or for distribution combined with broadcast</td>
<td>H04H 20/12</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
H04N 21/2401
{Monitoring of the client buffer}

Definition statement
This place covers:
The server monitors the client buffer.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US 2007/0237187 A1

H04N 21/2402
{Monitoring of the downstream path of the transmission network, e.g. bandwidth available (traffic monitoring in data switching networks H04L 43/00; monitoring data switching networks utilization H04L 43/0876)}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Monitoring of the available bandwidth or bit rate.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: WO 2008/054926 A1, US 2007/0153692 A1

References
Limiting references
This place does not cover:

| Traffic monitoring in data switching networks | H04L 43/00 |
| Monitoring data switching networks utilization | H04L 43/0876 |

H04N 21/2404
{Monitoring of server processing errors or hardware failure (error or fault detection G06F 11/07; monitoring in general G06F 11/30)}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Detection of an error during content distribution, content loading, multiplex management, hardware failure.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US2006218600,WO0031975,US 2002/0066050 A1

References
Limiting references
This place does not cover:

| Error or fault detection | G06F 11/07 |
| Monitoring in general   | G06F 11/30 |
H04N 21/2405

{Monitoring of the internal components or processes of the server, e.g. server load (allocation of resources in multiprogramming arrangements G06F 9/50; performance measurement of computer activity G06F 11/34)}

Definition statement

This place covers:

The load or processing capabilities of the server are monitored.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US 2004/0202444, WO2010058215, US2008209481,

References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Allocation of resources in multiprogramming arrangements</th>
<th>G06F 9/50</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Performance measurement of computer activity</td>
<td>G06F 11/34</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

H04N 21/2407

{Monitoring of transmitted content, e.g. distribution time, number of downloads (arrangements for monitoring programmes for broadcast or for distribution combined with broadcast H04H 20/14)}

Definition statement

This place covers:

Monitoring of aired content for logging and verification purposes. It can be sent to a rights server or an advertiser for billing. Includes the number of times content has been downloaded (not requested, which is classified elsewhere).

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: WO 03/017640 A1

References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

| Arrangements for monitoring programmes for broadcast or for distribution combined with broadcast | H04H 20/14 |
H04N 21/2408

{Monitoring of the upstream path of the transmission network, e.g. client requests (protocols for scheduling and organising the servicing of requests in network applications in communication control or processing H04L 29/08945; monitoring data switching networks utilization H04L 43/0876)}

Definition statement

This place covers:

- Requests from clients received at the upstream interface are monitored.
- Includes log files of client requests.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US 2004/0116067 A1

References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

| Protocol for scheduling and organising the servicing of requests in network applications in communication control or processing | H04L 29/08945 |
| Monitoring data switching networks utilization | H04L 43/0876 |

H04N 21/241

Operating system [OS] processes, e.g. server setup

Definition statement

This place covers:

Basic functions provided by the operating system like memory management, event handling, multitasking, multithreading, setup.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US 2004/0197073 A1

References

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| OS processes, e.g. booting a STB, implementing a Java virtual machine in a STB or power management in a STB | H04N 21/443 |
| Program loading or initiating in general | G06F 9/445 |
| Multiprogramming arrangements | G06F 9/46 |
**H04N 21/242**

Synchronization processes, e.g. processing of PCR [Program Clock References] {(arrangements for synchronising broadcast or distribution via plural systems in broadcast distribution systems **H04H 20/18**)}

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

Synchronization issues.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: EP 1 339 182 A2

**References**

**Limiting references**

*This place does not cover:*

| Arrangements for synchronising broadcast or distribution via plural systems in broadcast distribution systems | H04H 20/18 |

**Informative references**

*Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:*

| Synchronising circuits with arrangements for extending range of synchronisation at the transmitter end | H04N 5/067 |
| Synchronisation arrangements in time-division multiplex systems | H04J 3/06 |
| Arrangements for synchronising receiver with transmitter | H04L 7/00 |

**H04N 21/25**

Management operations performed by the server for facilitating the content distribution or administrating data related to end-users or client devices, e.g. end-user or client device authentication, learning user preferences for recommending movies {(maintenance or administration in data networks **H04L 41/00**)}

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

Server-side system management

**References**

**Limiting references**

*This place does not cover:*

| Maintenance or administration in data networks | H04L 41/00 |
H04N 21/251

{Learning process for intelligent management, e.g. learning user preferences for recommending movies (details of learning user preferences for the retrieval of video data in a video database G06F 16/739; computer systems using learning methods G06N 3/08)}

Definition statement

This place covers:
Server-side agents are similar to the agents implemented on the client and perform similar operations.

References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Client-side agents</th>
<th>H04N 21/466</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Details of learning user preferences for the retrieval of video data in a video database</td>
<td>G06F 16/735</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Computer systems using learning methods</td>
<td>G06N 3/08</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

H04N 21/252

{Processing of multiple end-users' preferences to derive collaborative data}

Definition statement

This place covers:
Preference data are processed to determine similarities between users. They can be clustered to have a limited number of groups of viewers. They are used to enrich the profile of one user by adding data from similar users.

References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

| Deriving a common profile for several users on the same client, e.g. family profile | H04N 21/4661 |

H04N 21/254

Management at additional data server, e.g. shopping server, rights management server {{protocols involving third party service providers for network applications in communication control or processing H04L 29/08666; arrangements for maintenance or administration in data networks H04L 41/00}}

Definition statement

This place covers:

- Non-video distribution application.
- A whole range of services, which do not deal directly with the distribution of multimedia content. They play a crucial part of the associated business model but because of their non-technical...
nature, they are separated from the other management functions. They can also be provided by a 3rd party.

- Support/help center, the HLR of a mobile phone network for collecting the position of a mobile client.

References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Classification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Protocols involving third party service providers for network applications in communication control or processing</td>
<td>H04L 29/08666</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arrangements for maintenance or administration in data networks</td>
<td>H04L 41/00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

H04N 21/2541

{Rights Management (protecting software against unauthorised usage in a vending or licensing environment G06F 21/10; security management or policies for network security H04L 29/06986; security in data switching network management H04L 41/28; access security in wireless networks H04W 12/08)}

Definition statement

This place covers:

External server specially adapted to perform rights management operations.

References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Classification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Client-side monitoring of content usage</td>
<td>H04N 21/44204</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Definition of usage data</td>
<td>H04N 21/8355</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Protecting software against unauthorised usage in a vending or licensing environment</td>
<td>G06F 21/10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Security management or policies for network security</td>
<td>H04L 29/06986</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Security in data switching network management</td>
<td>H04L 41/28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Access security in wireless networks</td>
<td>H04W 12/08</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

H04N 21/2542

{for selling goods, e.g. TV shopping (payment schemes, payment architectures or payment protocols for electronic shopping systems G06Q 20/12)}

Definition statement

This place covers:

Shopping and product management aspect. The shopping application is classified elsewhere.
References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

| Payment schemes, payment architectures or payment protocols for electronic shopping systems | G06Q 20/12 |

**H04N 21/2543**

Billing {, e.g. for subscription services (payment schemes, architectures or protocols G06Q 20/00; e-commerce G06Q 30/00; arrangements for billing for the use of broadcast information or broadcast-related information H04H 60/21)}

Definition statement

This place covers:
Billing aspects.

References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

| Arrangements for billing for the use of broadcast information or broadcast-related information | H04H 60/21 |

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Billing systems or methods specially adapted for commercial purposes | G06Q 30/04 |
| Charging arrangements in data networks | H04L 12/14 |

**H04N 21/25435**

{involving characteristics of content or additional data, e.g. video resolution or the amount of advertising}

Definition statement

This place covers:
The price depends on the nature of the program offered. It can be also inversely proportional to the amount of commercials inserted.

**H04N 21/2547**

Third Party Billing, e.g. billing of advertiser

Definition statement

This place covers:
Billing aspects not pertaining to the end-user or subscriber but to a third party such as an advertiser. Billing can be performed according to monitored viewer selections.
H04N 21/258

Client or end-user data management, e.g. managing client capabilities, user preferences or demographics, processing of multiple end-users preferences to derive collaborative data {(arrangements for services using the result on the distributing side of broadcast systems H04H 60/66; data switching network applications involving user or terminal profiles H04L 29/08918)}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Customer management. Maintains databases for storing data about the clients it is connected to and their users.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US 2003/0231854 A1

References
Limiting references

This place does not cover:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Arrangements for services using the result on the distributing side of broadcast systems</th>
<th>H04H 60/66</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Data switching network applications involving user or terminal profiles</td>
<td>H04L 29/08918</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

H04N 21/25808

{Management of client data (protocols involving terminal profiles for network applications in communication control or processing H04L 29/08927)}

Definition statement
This place covers:
The management system stores data pertaining to the client device, regardless of its user.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US 2008/0066128 A1

References
Limiting references

This place does not cover:

| Protocols involving terminal profiles for network applications in communication control or processing | H04L 29/08927 |
H04N 21/25816
{involving client authentication (restricting access to computer systems by authenticating users using a predetermined code G06F 21/33; authentication mechanisms for network security in communication control or processing H04L 29/06755; authentication in wireless network security H04W 12/06)}

Definition statement
This place covers:
The server authenticates the client device.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US 2008/0118063 A1

References
Limiting references
This place does not cover:

| Restricting access to computer systems by authenticating users using a predetermined code | G06F 21/33 |
| Authentication mechanisms for network security in communication control or processing | H04L 29/06755 |
| Authentication in wireless network security | H04W 12/06 |

H04N 21/25825
{involving client display capabilities, e.g. screen resolution of a mobile phone (optimising the visualisation of content during browsing in the Internet G06F 16/9577; processing of terminal status or physical abilities in wireless networks H04W 8/22; authentication in wireless network security H04W 12/06)}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Clients may being diverse by nature and have different display capabilities, e.g. TV, PC, mobile phone, PDA,..

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: WO 2009/002324 A1

References
Limiting references
This place does not cover:

| Reformatting of the video stream by the server, e.g. based on client parameters | H04N 21/2343 |
| Optimising the visualisation of content during browsing in the Internet | G06F 16/9577 |
| Processing of terminal status or physical abilities in wireless networks | H04W 8/22 |
| Authentication in wireless network security | H04W 12/06 |
H04N 21/25833

{involving client hardware characteristics, e.g. manufacturer, processing or storage capabilities (allocation of resources considering hardware capabilities in multiprogramming arrangements G06F 9/5044; allocation of resources considering software capabilities in multiprogramming arrangements G06F 9/5055)}

Definition statement

This place covers:

A hardware profile contains a client ID, a STB manufacturer, model, general processing and memory/storage capabilities, except for display.

References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

| Allocation of resources considering hardware capabilities in multiprogramming arrangements | G06F 9/5044 |
| Allocation of resources considering software capabilities in multiprogramming arrangements | G06F 9/5055 |

H04N 21/25841

{involving the geographical location of the client (retrieval from the Internet by querying based on geographical locations G06F 16/9537; arrangements for identifying locations of receiving stations in broadcast systems H04H 60/51; protocols in which the network application is adapted for the location of the user terminal in communication control or processing H04L 29/08657; services making use of the location of users or terminals in wireless networks H04W 4/02; locating users or terminals in wireless networks H04W 64/00)}

Definition statement

This place covers:

The server determines or is aware of the location of the client device. The determination can be performed by retrieving data from a HLR in a mobile phone network or by triangulation methods. This must be distinguished from user demographical data, classified elsewhere. It is typically used for targeting location dependent programs or additional informations.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: WO 2006/136109 A1

References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

| Retrieval from the Internet by querying based on geographical locations | G06F 16/9537 |
| Arrangements for identifying locations of receiving stations in broadcast systems | H04H 60/51 |
Protocols in which the network application is adapted for the location of the user terminal in communication control or processing | H04L 29/08657
---|---
Services making use of the location of users or terminals in wireless networks | H04W 4/02
Locating users or terminals in wireless networks | H04W 64/00

H04N 21/2585

{Generation of a revocation list, e.g. of client devices involved in piracy acts}

Definition statement

This place covers:
The server keeps a list of client devices, which have been reported to be involved in piracy acts, such as falsifying the decryption card.

H04N 21/25858

{involving client software characteristics, e.g. OS identifier}

Definition statement

This place covers:
The software profile contains a record of the type of software installed on the client, including version number for automatic upgrades.

References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

| Details of operating systems in clients | H04N 21/443 |
| Executable data per se | H04N 21/8166 |

H04N 21/25866

{Management of end-user data (customer care in data networks H04L 41/5077)}

Definition statement

This place covers:
The management system stores data related to its users regardless of the client device they use.

References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

| Customer care in data networks | H04L 41/5077 |
H04N 21/25875

{involving end-user authentication (restricting access to computer systems by authenticating users using a predetermined code G06F 21/33; arrangements for secret or secure communication including means for verifying the identity or authority of a user of the system H04L 9/32; authentication mechanisms for network security in communication control or processing H04L 29/06755; authentication in wireless network security H04W 12/06)}

Definition statement

This place covers:

Storage of physical characteristics of the user (e.g. fingerprint). The server authenticates the user of the client device.

References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Restricting access to computer systems by authenticating users using a predetermined code</th>
<th>G06F 21/33</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Arrangements for secret or secure communication including means for verifying the identity or authority of a user of the system</td>
<td>H04L 9/32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Authentication mechanisms for network security in communication control or processing</td>
<td>H04L 29/06755</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Authentication in wireless network security</td>
<td>H04W 12/06</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

H04N 21/25883

{being end-user demographical data, e.g. age, family status or address (arrangements for identifying locations of users in broadcast systems H04H 60/52)}

Definition statement

This place covers:

When the user registers for the 1st time, he provides demographical data such as his gender, age, family status, profession, adress and ZIP code. Covers general interests but not viewing interests.

References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Arrangements for identifying locations of users in broadcast systems</th>
<th>H04H 60/52</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
**H04N 21/25891**

{being end-user preferences (retrieval of video data in a video database based on user preferences \textit{G06F 16/739}; arrangements for recognizing users' preferences \textit{H04H 60/46}; protocols involving user profiles for network applications in communication control or processing \textit{H04L 29/08936}; processing of user preferences or user profiles in wireless networks \textit{H04W 8/18})}

**Definition statement**

This place covers:

Preferences may be derived from viewing history of the user and have been collected dynamically. Preferences can also be collected at user registration by providing general interests.

**References**

**Limiting references**

This place does not cover:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Specification</th>
<th>Classification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Client-side monitoring of end-user</td>
<td>H04N 21/44213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uploading data stored on the client to server</td>
<td>H04N 21/658</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Retrieval of video data in a video database based on user preferences</td>
<td>G06F 16/735</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arrangements for recognizing users' preferences</td>
<td>H04H 60/46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Protocols involving user profiles for network applications in communication control or processing</td>
<td>H04L 29/08936</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Processing of user preferences or user profiles in wireless networks</td>
<td>H04W 8/18</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**H04N 21/262**

Content or additional data distribution scheduling, e.g. sending additional data at off-peak times, updating software modules, calculating the carousel transmission frequency, delaying a video stream transmission, generating play-lists {((scheduling strategies for dispatcher in multiprogramming arrangements \textit{G06F 9/4881}; arrangements for scheduling broadcast services or broadcast-related services \textit{H04H 60/06}; protocols for scheduling and organising the servicing of requests, whereby a time schedule is established for servicing the requests in network applications in communication control or processing \textit{H04L 29/08963}; flow control in packet networks \textit{H04L 47/10})}

**Definition statement**

This place covers:

The function of the scheduler is to plan the distribution of the multimedia content over time. It must guarantee, that the client can access the content, when it is supposed to. The scheduler considers a number of constraints, like different available bandwidths for example at day or night, or higher priorities if a user has paid a higher fee or the best timing for inserting a commercial (prime time). It has also to perform location resolution tasks, like for example assigning a time and channel to a TV program.
References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>CPC Code</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Scheduling strategies for dispatcher in multiprogramming arrangements</td>
<td>G06F 9/4881</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arrangements for scheduling broadcast services or broadcast-related services</td>
<td>H04H 60/06</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Protocols for scheduling and organising the servicing of requests, whereby a time schedule is established for servicing the requests in network applications in communication control or processing</td>
<td>H04L 29/08963</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flow control in packet networks</td>
<td>H04L 47/10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

H04N 21/26208

(the scheduling operation being performed under constraints)

Definition statement

This place covers:
The scheduling algorithm performs optimization operations under constraints received as input data.

H04N 21/26216

(involving the channel capacity, e.g. network bandwidth (admission control, resource allocation in open networks H04L 12/5692; protocols for scheduling and organising the servicing of requests, whereby quality of service and priority requirements are taken into account in network applications in communication control or processing H04L 29/08954; flow control in packet networks H04L 47/10))

Definition statement

This place covers:
The scheduler prioritizes the items to be transmitted according to the available network bandwidth.

References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>CPC Code</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Admission control, resource allocation in open networks</td>
<td>H04L 12/5692</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Protocols for scheduling and organising the servicing of requests, whereby quality of service and priority requirements are taken into account in network applications in communication control or processing</td>
<td>H04L 29/08954</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flow control in packet networks</td>
<td>H04L 47/10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**H04N 21/26225**

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

The scheduler defines priorities for the different items to be sent, for example according to billing policy (the user, who has been charged most will be served first).

**H04N 21/26233**

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

Duration of a movie or TV program.

**H04N 21/26241**

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

Pertains to the time of the day, week,..., for example the best time of the day for inserting a commercial or airing a program suitable for children.

**H04N 21/2625**

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

A TV program is delayed because of e.g. an expanded sport event.

**H04N 21/26258**

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

Generation of a playlist and scheduling content items according to a playlist.
References

Limiting references
This place does not cover:

Retrieval of multimedia data based on playlists

References

H04N 21/26266

{for determining content or additional data repetition rate, e.g. of a file in a DVB carousel according to its importance (arrangements for broadcast or for distribution of identical information repeatedly in broadcast distribution systems H04H 20/16)}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Algorithms considering at which frequency a piece of data should be repeated in the carousel, for example according to its importance. Also pertains to data which is repeated at a constant frequency.

References

Limiting references
This place does not cover:

Arrangements for broadcast or for distribution of identical information repeatedly in broadcast distribution systems

H04N 21/26275

{for distributing content or additional data in a staggered manner, e.g. repeating movies on different channels in a time-staggered manner in a near video on demand system}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Scheduling of NVOD services. Movies are repeated on different channels in a time-staggered manner.

H04N 21/26283

{for associating distribution time parameters to content, e.g. to generate electronic program guide data}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Metadata, such as program descriptors is received from the content provider, which itself is not aware of a transmission schedule. Therefore the creation of the EPG data consisting of metadata and time information is performed by the scheduler. The EPG user interface for program selection by the user is classified elsewhere.
H04N 21/26291

{for providing content or additional data updates, e.g. updating software modules, stored at the client (deployment, distribution, installation, update of software G06F 8/65; error detection or correction during software upgrading G06F 11/1433; arrangements for updating broadcast information or broadcast-related information H04H 60/25)}

Definition statement

This place covers:

The scheduler decides to update data or software resident in the client for example on a regular basis or according to special events.

References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

| Deployment, distribution, installation, update of software | G06F 8/65 |
| Error detection or correction during software upgrading | G06F 11/1433 |
| Arrangements for updating broadcast information or broadcast-related information | H04H 60/25 |

H04N 21/266

Channel or content management, e.g. generation and management of keys and entitlement messages in a conditional access system, merging a VOD unicast channel into a multicast channel

Definition statement

This place covers:

Gathering multimedia content from different sources, analyzing it and creating appropriate channels for the clients. It receives input from the scheduler.

H04N 21/26603

{for automatically generating descriptors from content, e.g. when it is not made available by its provider, using content analysis techniques}

Definition statement

This place covers:

Documents describing the processing of these descriptors, for example in case-based systems, where an incoming piece of content is classified with other similar ones.
H04N 21/26606
{for generating or managing entitlement messages, e.g. Entitlement Control Message [ECM] or Entitlement Management Message [EMM] (arrangements for conditional access to broadcast information or to broadcast-related services H04H 60/14)}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Generation and management of entitlement messages in a conditional access system. Pertains to ECM and EMM only.

References

Limiting references
This place does not cover:

| Arrangements for conditional access to broadcast information or to broadcast-related services | H04H 60/14 |

H04N 21/26609
{using retrofitting techniques, e.g. by re-encrypting the control words used for pre-encryption}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Trans-encryption of the ECMs resulting from pre-encryption (or re-encryption of the control words used for pre-encryption) for use with a different transmission key, also known as encryption renewal.

H04N 21/26613
{for generating or managing keys in general (key distribution for secret or secure communication involving central third party, e.g. key distribution center [KDC] or trusted third party [TTP] H04L 9/083; key management for security in wireless networks H04L 29/06707; key management for network security in communication control or processing H04W 12/04)}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Generation and management of keys on the server side.

References

Limiting references
This place does not cover:

| Key distribution for secret or secure communication, using a key distribution center, a trusted party or a key server | H04L 9/083 |
| Key management for security in wireless networks | H04L 29/06707 |
**H04N 21/26616**

{for merging a unicast channel into a multicast channel, e.g. in a VOD application, when a client served by unicast channel catches up a multicast channel to save bandwidth (data multicast over packet-switching network H04L 12/18)}

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

Different channels can be merged in a single one. For example, in a VOD application, a client served by unicast channel catches up a multicast channel. Stream merging allows to minimize bandwidth.

**References**

**Limiting references**

*This place does not cover:*

- Data multicast over packet-switching network [H04L 12/18]

---

**H04N 21/2662**

Controlling the complexity of the video stream, e.g. by scaling the resolution or bitrate of the video stream based on the client capabilities

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

The server controls the complexity of the video stream, for example based on its capabilities.

---

**H04N 21/2665**

Gathering content from different sources, e.g. Internet and satellite

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

How content is retrieved from different sources (e.g. satellite and internet) or from different content providers.
**H04N 21/2668**

Creating a channel for a dedicated end-user group, e.g. insertion of targeted commercials based on end-user profiles {(information retrieval from the Internet by querying with filtering and personalisation G06F 16/9535; arrangements for replacing or switching information during the broadcast H04H 20/10; push services over packet-switching network H04L 12/1859; adaptation of message content in packet-switching networks H04L 51/063)}

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

- Generation of a personalized channel for one or a group of clients, according to their preferences. It also receives data from the scheduler.
- Describes the insertion of targeted commercials by the server (with no further details at bitstream level).

**References**

**Limiting references**

*This place does not cover:*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>CPC</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Information retrieval from the Internet by querying with filtering and personalisation</td>
<td>G06F 16/9535</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arrangements for replacing or switching information during the broadcast</td>
<td>H04H 20/10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Push services over packet-switching network</td>
<td>H04L 12/1859</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adaptation of message content in packet-switching networks</td>
<td>H04L 51/063</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**H04N 21/27**

**Server based end-user applications**

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

Applications, where the end-user is aware that they are residing on the server, such as video hosting.

**H04N 21/274**

**Storing end-user {multimedia} data in response to end-user request {, e.g. network recorder}**

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

Storage of private data based on the explicit request of the end-user. The server holds private data received from the client as an extra service.

**References**

**Limiting references**

*This place does not cover:*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>CPC</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Management of user data for administrative purposes</td>
<td>H04N 21/25866</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**H04N 21/2743**

Video hosting of uploaded data from client

**Definition statement**

_This place covers:_

Personal videos have been uploaded by clients, for example to be viewed by other users.

**H04N 21/2747**

Remote storage of video programs received via the downstream path, e.g. from the server

**Definition statement**

_This place covers:_

The source can be a storage dedicated for each user for example to record movies if the capacity of his hard disk is not sufficient.

**H04N 21/278**

Content descriptor database or directory service for end-user access {{details of content or meta data based information retrieval of video data in video databases [G06F 16/739]}}

**Definition statement**

_This place covers:_

Creation of directory services, for example by indexing metadata for easy retrieval (keyword search of movies).

**References**

**Limiting references**

_This place does not cover:_

| Details of content or meta data based information retrieval of video data in video databases | [G06F 16/70] |

**H04N 21/40**

Client devices specifically adapted for the reception of or interaction with content, e.g. set-top-box [STB]; Operations thereof {{arrangements for distribution where lower stations, e.g. receivers, interact with the broadcast [H04H 20/38]; arrangements specially adapted for receiving broadcast information [H04H 40/00]}}

**Definition statement**

_This place covers:_

Subject matter directed to the structure or operation of the client or end user device, such as a TV receiver, a set-top-box, a PC-TV, a mobile appliance (e.g. mobile phone or vehicle), being defined as receiving video and possibly additional data from one or several servers or intermediate component via network for further processing, storing and displaying. This also includes the transmission of these
data on a home-based local network to further devices. The client extracts the raw multimedia content from the streams received from possibly heterogeneous sources (e.g. internet, broadcast network) and only provides a network interface. Exchange of control signals with the server or the network are placed by definition in the T-model as well as the uploading of client data to the server.

The first layer of this subgroup pertains to the physical description of the client and attached devices, e.g. its internal components, plug-in cards, input means, peripherals.

The second layer is directed to elementary specialized functions such as the processing of the data received from the downstream network interface (e.g. channel decoding, descrambling) and transmitted from the upstream network interface, the demultiplexing into elementary streams and the processing thereof, the extraction of additional data, the local storage of the content within the client device or its forwarding to peripheral devices via a local network, the combined display of several pieces of content on the same screen (e.g. news ticker, advertisement in a separate window), the monitoring of e.g. internal processes, user actions, network bandwidth. This layer also encompasses the software structure of the client device.

The third layer describes high level functions such as the selection of content (e.g. in unidirectional systems where the whole content is sent to the client), the management of content usage (e.g. conditional access, rights), the creation of local virtual channels (e.g. by combining streams retrieved from the broadcast network and the hard disk), the adaptation by learning of internal parameters (e.g. viewer profile).

The last layer is directed to services or applications as provided to the end user of the system such as defining setting parameters, selecting programs, making requests to the server or accessing additional services (e.g. banking, shopping, WWW browsing, gaming).

The subgroup is directed to documents related to the reception and processing of received data.

References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>CPC Code</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Transmission and reception details at the client device</td>
<td>H04N 21/40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Raw multimedia data per se</td>
<td>H04N 21/80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arrangements for distribution where lower stations, e.g. receivers, interact with the broadcast</td>
<td>H04H 20/38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arrangements specially adapted for receiving broadcast information</td>
<td>H04H 40/00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

H04N 21/41

Structure of client; Structure of client peripherals

Definition statement

This place covers:

Hardware level. Physical description of the multimedia client. As most of the components are always present (e.g. tuner, memory), there is no need to describe them all to avoid unnecessary classification work. An index should be allocated only if one of the component has a critical function in the invention. It should be further noted, that most of the components have already an entry in other technical fields and that for example the circuitry of a tuner is not part of this model.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: WO 2006/017436 A2
**H04N 21/4104**

{using peripherals receiving signals from specially adapted client devices}

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

A peripheral is considered here as an external device, which receives multimedia data from the client (which excludes cards) being in the immediate vicinity of the client (same room or house). The most common example is the video recorder but other devices on a home network are possible. Covered are also PDA, game console or remote controls with a display.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US 2007/0143801 A1

**References**

**Limiting references**

*This place does not cover:*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Input-only peripherals</th>
<th>H04N 21/422</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Communication aspects with peripherals</td>
<td>H04N 21/436</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**H04N 21/4108**

{characterized by an identification number or address, e.g. local network address (protecting specific internal or external computer components used for computing or processing information by creating or determining hardware identification [G06F 21/73]; addressing and naming in data networks [H04L 29/12009])}

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

Identification number of the peripheral device, network address on the local network.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US 2007/0254651 A1

**References**

**Limiting references**

*This place does not cover:*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Protecting specific internal or external computer components used for computing or processing information by creating or determining hardware identification</th>
<th>G06F 21/73</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Addressing and naming in data networks</td>
<td>H04L 29/12009</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
H04N 21/4113

{PC}

Definition statement
This place covers:
The client device, typically a STB here, is connected to a personal computer, allowing e.g. to extract data or software multiplexed with the video signal and to forward it to a PC.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US 2005/0146598 A1

H04N 21/4117

{for generating hard copies of the content, e.g. printer, electronic paper (interfaces to printers G06F 3/12; printing data G06K 15/02)}

Definition statement
This place covers:
The printer can be used for printing coupons or any additional data received by the STB. Covers also electronic paper.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: EP 1492338 A1

References
Limiting references
This place does not cover:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Interfaces to printers</th>
<th>G06F 3/12</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Printing data</td>
<td>G06K 15/02</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

H04N 21/4122

{additional display device, e.g. video projector (digital output for controlling a plurality of local displays G06F 3/1423)}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Additional display device, e.g. projector. Excludes the main display device (e.g. TV set), which is always present.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US 2009/0040233 A1

References
Limiting references
This place does not cover:

| Digital output for controlling a plurality of local displays | G06F 3/1423 |
H04N 21/4126
{portable device, e.g. remote control with a display, PDA, mobile phone
(constructional details of equipment or arrangements specially adapted for
portable computer application G06F 1/1626)}

Definition statement

This place covers:
Device receiving data from the client device, being typically a remote control with a display, a PDA or a mobile phone. Excludes PC, printer, additional display, recorder.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: EP 2023350 A1

References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

| Constructional details of equipment or arrangements specially adapted for portable computer application | G06F 1/1626 |

H04N 21/4131

{home appliance, e.g. lighting, air conditioning system, metering devices
(home automation data switching networks exchanging configuration information on appliance services H04L 12/2807)}

Definition statement

This place covers:
A home appliance can be a lighting or an air conditioning system or metering devices.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: WO 2008/018102 A2

References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

| Home automation data switching networks exchanging configuration information on appliance services | H04L 12/2807 |

H04N 21/4135

{external recorder (interface circuits between an apparatus for recording television signals and a television receiver H04N 5/775)}

Definition statement

This place covers:
A recording device can be a VCR an external hard disk. DVD players as source of video or additional data are also covered here. Personal video recorders with an internal hard disk are covered elsewhere.
Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US 2008/0002951 A1

References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

| Interface circuits between an apparatus for recording television signals and a television receiver | H04N 5/775 |

H04N 21/414

Specialised client platforms, e.g. receiver in car or embedded in a mobile appliance

Definition statement

This place covers:

different embodiments of video client platforms.

H04N 21/41407

{embedded in a portable device, e.g. video client on a mobile phone, PDA, laptop (constructional details of equipment or arrangements specially adapted for portable computer application G06F 1/1626; arrangements specially adapted for mobile receivers in broadcast systems H04H 20/57)}

Definition statement

This place covers:

The client device is a mobile phone, a PDA or any portable device.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: WO 2008/097006 A1

References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

| Constructional details of equipment or arrangements specially adapted for portable computer application | G06F 1/1626 |
| Arrangements specially adapted for mobile receivers in broadcast systems | H04H 20/57 |

H04N 21/41415

{involving a public display, viewable by several users in a public space outside their home, e.g. movie theatre, information kiosk}

Definition statement

This place covers:

Display device viewable by several users in a public space outside their home (e.g. movie theater, information kiosk). Excludes access points for downloading informations.
Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: WO 2007/067235 A1

**H04N 21/41422**

{located in transportation means, e.g. personal vehicle (arrangements specially adapted for transportation systems in broadcast systems H04H 20/62)}

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

The client device is located in a vehicle, e.g. car entertainment system.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: WO 2006/136109 A1

**References**

**Limiting references**

*This place does not cover:*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Arrangements specially adapted for transportation systems in broadcast systems</th>
<th>H04H 20/62</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**H04N 21/4143**

{embedded in a} Personal Computer [PC]

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

The client device is a personal computer but not a portable device.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: EP 0 834798 A2

**H04N 21/4147**

PVR [Personal Video Recorder] (H04N 5/76 takes precedence {; arrangements for broadcast with accumulation-type receivers H04H 20/40})

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

The client device is a personal video recorder, STB with hard disk, Tivo...

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: WO2006/015186 82

**References**

**Limiting references**

*This place does not cover:*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Television signal recording</th>
<th>H04N 5/76</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Arrangements for broadcast with accumulation-type receivers</td>
<td>H04H 20/40</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**H04N 21/418**

External card to be used in combination with the client device, e.g. for conditional access

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

A card is an external component, which can be inserted in a dedicated slot. It can be a smart card for a conditional access system or an extension module to upgrade the STB capabilities.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: WO 2007/141644 A2

**References**

*Limiting references*

*This place does not cover:*

- DVB common interfaces

**H04N 21/4181**

{for conditional access}

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

The card holds a key for Conditional Access purposes (descrambling) or other decryption operations.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: EP 1819163 A1

**H04N 21/4182**

{for identification purposes, e.g. storing user identification data, preferences, personal settings or data (restricting access to computer systems by authenticating users using a predetermined code in combination with an additional device, e.g. dongle or smart card **G06F 21/123**)}

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

The card holds identification data of the user, preferences, personal settings or any kind of personal data.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: EP 1906650 A2

**References**

*Limiting references*

*This place does not cover:*

- Restricting access to computer systems by authenticating users using a predetermined code in combination with an additional device, e.g. dongle or smart card **G06F 21/123**
H04N 21/4183
{providing its own processing capabilities, e.g. external module for video decoding}

Definition statement
This place covers:
The card has its own processing capabilities (e.g. external module for video decoding).

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: EP 1309182 A2

H04N 21/4184
{providing storage capabilities, e.g. memory stick}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Extension module or storage capabilities, e.g. memory stick.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US 2006/0257101 A1

H04N 21/4185
for payment

Definition statement
This place covers:
Bank, credit card or prepaid card, to be used e.g. in TV shopping applications.

References
Informative references
Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Elementary client operations, e.g. monitoring of home network or synchronising decoder's clock | H04N 21/43 |
| Information-bearing cards or sheet-like structures characterised by identification or security features for use in combination with accessories specially adapted for information-bearing cards | B42D 25/22 |
| Payment schemes, architectures or protocols | G06Q 20/00 |
| Payment architectures where the payment is settled via telecommunication systems | G06Q 20/16 |
| Payment architectures, schemes or protocols characterised by the use of cards | G06Q 20/34 |
| E-commerce | G06Q 30/00 |
| Mechanisms actuated by coded identity card or credit card to free or to actuate vending, hiring, coin or paper currency dispensing or refunding apparatus | G07F 7/08 |
| Charging arrangements in data networks | H04L 12/14 |
**H04N 21/422**

Input-only peripherals {, i.e. input devices connected to specially adapted client devices}, e.g. global positioning system [GPS] {{input devices also receiving signals from specially adapted client devices H04N 21/4104}}

**Definition statement**

This place covers:

Devices used to send information and control signals from the user and its environment to the client. It includes remote controls, keyboards, mouses, microphones as well as cameras or biosensors.

**References**

**Limiting references**

This place does not cover:

| Peripherals receiving signals from client devices | H04N 21/4104 |

**Informative references**

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Input arrangements or combined input and output arrangements for interaction between user and computer | G06F 3/01 |

**H04N 21/42201**

{biosensors, e.g. heat sensor for presence detection, EEG sensors or any limb activity sensors worn by the user (input arrangements for interaction with the human body based on nervous system activity detection G06F 3/015)}

**Definition statement**

This place covers:

Can be used as passive input from the user. Such devices can be heat sensor for presence detection, EEG sensors or any limb activity sensors worn by the user.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: EP 1991001 A1

**References**

**Limiting references**

This place does not cover:

| Input arrangements for interaction with the human body based on nervous system activity detection | G06F 3/015 |
H04N 21/42202
{environmental sensors, e.g. for detecting temperature, luminosity, pressure, earthquakes}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Sensors connected to the client allow to determine e.g. temperature, luminosity, pressure, earthquakes. Includes position sensors (e.g. GPS).

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US 2002/0142722 A1

H04N 21/42203
{sound input device, e.g. microphone}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Any sound input device. Can be used to generate audio streams or to enter voice commands.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US 2009/0030681 A1

H04N 21/42204
{User interfaces specially adapted for controlling a client device through a remote control device; Remote control devices therefor (interaction techniques for graphical user interfaces in general, see G06F 3/048; computer pointing devices in general, see G06F 3/033; user interfaces for controlling a tuning device of a television receiver through a remote control H03J 9/00; constructive details of casings for the remote control device H01H 9/0235; remote control of peripheral devices connected to a television receiver through the remote control device of the television receiver H04B 1/205; remote control devices in general G08C)}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Only remote control devices transmitting input data to the client device and located in the direct vicinity thereof are classified here.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: DE 10 2006 028 505 A1

References

Limiting references
This place does not cover:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Computer pointing devices in general</th>
<th>G06F 3/033</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Interaction techniques for graphical user interfaces in general</td>
<td>G06F 3/048</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remote control devices in general</td>
<td>G08C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Constructive details of casings for the remote control device</td>
<td>H01H 9/0235</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
User interfaces for controlling a tuning device of a television receiver through a remote control

Table: CPC Codes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CPC Code</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>H03J 9/00</td>
<td>Remote control of peripheral devices connected to a television receiver</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H04B 1/205</td>
<td>through the remote control device of the television receiver</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**H04N 21/4223**

Cameras (H04N 5/225 takes precedence)

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

The camera allows the client to become a video source, for example for uploading videos to a server, or identification purposes. Camera has the meaning of image generating device and covers also scanner (paper, fingerprint, retina) or any kind of imaging device. The camera allows the client to become a video source. It can be used for identifying the user or uploading videos to the server.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: WO 2007/105246 A2

**References**

**Limiting references**

*This place does not cover:*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Camera Type</th>
<th>CPC Code</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Television cameras</td>
<td>H04N 5/225</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**H04N 21/4227**

{Providing} Remote input by a user located remotely from the client device, e.g. at work

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

The client device is controlled by an input device located at a distant location. A possible application could be that a user uses a mobile phone, a PDA or an office PC to program his STB at home. Input and client device are connected by a wide area network (e.g. internet).

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US 2007/0099560 A1

**H04N 21/426**

{Characteristics of or} Internal components of the client (H04N 5/44 takes precedence)

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

- Internal components such as tuner, demodulator, demultiplexer, descrambler, video/audio decoder, CPU, volatile memory, hard disk, graphics board/circuitry, modem. It should be noted that certain components are typical for a multimedia client, like the ones used for video processing or the receiver circuitry.
- Additional built-in cards.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: WO 2007/057482 A1
References

Limiting references
This place does not cover:

| Receiver circuitry | H04N 5/44 |

H04N 21/42607
{for processing the incoming bitstream}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Pieces of hardware processing the incoming bitstream.
Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US 2008/0120676 A1

H04N 21/42615
{involving specific demultiplexing arrangements}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US 2008/0144747 A1

H04N 21/42623
{involving specific decryption arrangements}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: EP 1487211 A3

H04N 21/4263
{involving specific tuning arrangements, e.g. two tuners}

Definition statement
This place covers:
The presence of at least 2 tuners in a client device.
Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US 2007/0035668 A1

H04N 21/42638
{involving a hybrid front-end, e.g. analog and digital tuners}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US 2007/0035668 A1
H04N 21/42646
{for reading from or writing on a non-volatile solid state storage medium, e.g. DVD, CD-ROM}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Internal reader / writer for DVD's, CD-ROM's and similar disks
Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: WO 2007/088511 A1

H04N 21/42653
{for processing graphics}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: WO 00/28518

H04N 21/42661
{for reading from or writing on a magnetic storage medium, e.g. hard disk drive}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US 2003/0108331 A1

H04N 21/42669
{the medium being removable}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Removable hard disk within a client.
Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: EP1883234 A2

H04N 21/42676
{for modulating an analogue carrier signal to encode digital information or demodulating it to decode digital information, e.g. ADSL or cable modem}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US 2004/0123329 A1
H04N 21/42684
{Client identification by a unique number or address, e.g. serial number, MAC address, socket ID (addressing and naming in data networks H04L 29/12009)}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Hardware identification or serial number, also MAC address, socket ID.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: EP 1359710 A2

References
Limiting references
This place does not cover:
Addressing and naming in data networks H04L 29/12009

H04N 21/42692
{for reading from or writing on a volatile storage medium, e.g. Random Access Memory [RAM]}

Definition statement
This place covers:

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: EP 1758402 A1

H04N 21/43
Processing of content or additional data, e.g. demultiplexing additional data from a digital video stream; Elementary client operations, e.g. monitoring of home network, synchronizing decoder's clock; Client middleware {(demultiplexing of data packets for data networks, e.g. RTP/UDP H04L 29/06176)}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Elementary specialized functions. They can be implemented in software or hardware. Their task is to control the corresponding hardware component and to provide a service to the upper layer.

References
Limiting references
This place does not cover:
Demultiplexing of data packets for data networks, e.g. RTP/UDP H04L 29/06176
H04N 21/4305

{Synchronizing client clock from received content stream, e.g. locking decoder clock with encoder clock, extraction of the PCR packets (arrangements for synchronising receiver with transmitter by comparing receiver clock with transmitter clock H04L 7/0012; arrangements for synchronising receiver with transmitter wherein the receiver takes measures against momentary loss of synchronisation H04L 7/0083)}

**Definition statement**

This place covers:
Clock recovery (extraction of the PCR packets).

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US 2008/0170593 A1

**References**

**Limiting references**

This place does not cover:

| Arrangements for synchronising receiver with transmitter by comparing receiver clock with transmitter clock | H04L 7/0012 |
| Arrangements for synchronising receiver with transmitter wherein the receiver takes measures against momentary loss of synchronisation | H04L 7/0083 |

H04N 21/4307

{Synchronizing display of multiple content streams, e.g. synchronisation of audio and video output or enabling or disabling interactive icons for a given period of time}

**Definition statement**

This place covers:
Synchronised presentation of the multimedia content according to the time stamps. Additional data can be synchronized to the main content. Also locking items at given times.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: WO 2007/005268 A2

H04N 21/431

**Generation of visual interfaces {for content selection or interaction}; Content or additional data rendering**

**Definition statement**

This place covers:
Details of the generation of visual interfaces on a video client, involving graphical features, screen space management. They must be differentiated from applications making use of them such as EPG
**References**

**Informative references**

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Receiver circuitry for displaying additional information</th>
<th>H04N 5/445</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>End-user applications using user interfaces</td>
<td>H04N 21/47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interaction techniques for graphical user interfaces</td>
<td>G06F 3/048</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**H04N 21/4312**

{involving specific graphical features, e.g. screen layout, special fonts or colors, blinking icons, highlights or animations}

**Definition statement**

This place covers:

Layout arrangement on the screen, overlays, menus in general

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US 2002/0184047 A1

**H04N 21/4314**

{for fitting data in a restricted space on the screen, e.g. EPG data in a rectangular grid}

**Definition statement**

This place covers:

Creation of a grid for e.g. an EPG application, where all the textual information is fitted, e.g. in a rectangular grid.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: WO 2008/078094 A2

**H04N 21/4316**

{for displaying supplemental content in a region of the screen, e.g. an advertisement in a separate window}

**Definition statement**

This place covers:

A separate window or region is provided to display additional data, like a commercial or additional text.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US 2008/0124057 A1
H04N 21/4318
{by altering the content in the rendering process, e.g. blanking, blurring or masking an image region (image enhancement or restoration in general G06T 5/00)}

Definition statement
This place covers:
• The displayed image can be altered according to certain parameters provided for example by an access control or censoring system. The image can be totally blanked or blurred or a region can be masked.
• Only details of the filtering action.
• Damping of brightness.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US 2003/0222994 A1

References
Limiting references
This place does not cover:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>High-level filtering performed on a region of the image</th>
<th>H04N 21/45455</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Image enhancement or restoration in general</td>
<td>G06T 5/00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

H04N 21/432
Content retrieval operation from a local storage medium, e.g. hard-disk
{(details of retrieval of video data and associated meta data in video databases G06F 16/739)}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Retrieval from local storage.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: EP 1 796 374 A1

References
Limiting references
This place does not cover:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Details of retrieval of video data and associated meta data in video databases</th>
<th>G06F 16/73</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
**H04N 21/4325**

{by playing back content from the storage medium (reproduction of recorded television signals H04N 5/76; reproduction of recorded television signals H04N 9/79)}

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

Playback of media data from fixed or removable local storage devices.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: EP 1 968 318 A1

**References**

**Limiting references**

*This place does not cover:*

| Reproduction of recorded television signals | H04N 5/76 |
| Reproduction of recorded television signals | H04N 9/79 |

**H04N 21/433**

Content storage operation, e.g. storage operation in response to a pause request, caching operations

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

Local storage. The client uses part of his volatile or non volatile memory (e.g. hard disk) to store a part of the received multimedia data or data it has generated itself (e.g. monitored data).

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: EP 1 848 214 A1

**H04N 21/4331**

{Caching operations, e.g. of an advertisement for later insertion during playback}

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

Caching operations, for example of commercials for later insertion or the generation of an internal database, for example for holding EPG data. The storage has a temporary aspect and must be distinguished from recording, which aims more at a long term archiving on request of the user. It is not meant either to describe buffering as performed in the video decoder, which holds the multimedia data for a brief period of time. Caching is an action, which is transparent to the end-user unlike recording.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: EP 1 331 810 A1
H04N 21/4332
{by placing content in organized collections, e.g. local EPG data repository (interfaces, Database management systems or updating for information retrieval [G06F 16/23]; details of retrieval of video data and associated meta data in video database [G06F 16/739])}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Particular details of the use of a local database. Also generation of directory structure, within the file system of the client device.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US 2008/0288988 A1

References
Limiting references
This place does not cover:

| Details of retrieval of video data and associated meta data in video database | G06F 16/71 |
| Interfaces, Database management systems or updating for information retrieval | G06F 16/23 |

H04N 21/4333
{Processing operations in response to a pause request}

Definition statement
This place covers:
The incoming video stream (e.g. from live broadcast) can be paused. It is stored locally to allow the user to resume viewing later on.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: EP 1 269 752 B1

H04N 21/4334
{Recording operations (recording of a television signal [H04N 5/76]; arrangements for recording or accumulating broadcast information or broadcast-related information [H04H 60/27])}

Definition statement
This place covers:
The received data is recorded for archiving purposes. This should be distinguished from caching, which has a temporary aspect.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: WO 2006/129818 A1
References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

| Arrangements for recording or accumulating broadcast information or broadcast-related information | H04H 60/27 |

**H04N 21/4335**

Housekeeping operations, e.g. prioritizing content for deletion because of storage space restrictions {(storage management, e.g. defragmentation G06F 3/0604; unloading stored programs G06F 9/445; storage management in file systems G06F 16/10; buffering arrangements in a network node or in an end terminal in packet networks H04L 49/90)}

Definition statement

This place covers:

The client device has a limited memory. Algorithms, describing which data are prioritized for deletion (e.g. oldest or less used data) are classified here.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US 2005/0193414 A1

References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

| Storage management, e.g. defragmentation | G06F 3/0604 |
| Unloading stored programs | G06F 9/445 |
| Storage management in file systems | G06F 16/10 |
| Buffering arrangements in a network node or in an end terminal in packet networks | H04L 49/90 |

**H04N 21/434**

Disassembling of a multiplex stream, e.g. demultiplexing audio and video streams, extraction of additional data from a video stream; Remultiplexing of multiplex streams; Extraction or processing of SI; Disassembling of packetised elementary stream {(demultiplexing of data packets for data networks, e.g. RTP/UDP H04L 65/00)}

Definition statement

This place covers:

Transport stream demultiplexing It takes as input transport streams and generates after demultiplexing A/V streams or remultiplexes several TS into a new transport stream. Demultiplexing includes PID filtering.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: EP 1 965 591 A1
References

Limiting references
This place does not cover:

- Multiplexing of data packets for data networks

### H04N 21/434

{Demultiplexing of audio and video streams}

**Definition statement**
This place covers:

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: EP 0 776 134 A2

### H04N 21/4342

{Demultiplexing isochronously with video sync, e.g. according to bit-parallel or bit-serial interface formats, as SDI}

**Definition statement**
This place covers:

Isochronously with the horizontal video sync, according to bit-parallel or bit-serial interface formats.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: EP 0 777 383 A1

### H04N 21/4344

{Remultiplexing of multiplex streams, e.g. by modifying time stamps or remapping the packet identifiers}

**Definition statement**
This place covers:

Modification of bitstream parameters, e.g. restamping, transmultiplexing, remapping of PIDs.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: EP 0 917 355 A1

### H04N 21/4345

{Extraction or processing of SI, e.g. extracting service information from an MPEG stream}

**Definition statement**
This place covers:

Retrieval of the system informations (SI).

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: WO 2008/108570 A1, US 2005/0060758 A1
H04N 21/4346
{involving stuffing data, e.g. packets or bytes (synchronisation arrangements in time-division multiplex systems with different or fluctuating information rates H04J 3/073)}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Extraction of the software or additional data that have been inserted in the packetised stream by replacement of (or by using the bandwidth occupied by) the stuffing bits/bytes/packets.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: EP 1 555 826 A1

References
Limiting references
This place does not cover:

| Synchronisation arrangements in time-division multiplex systems with different or fluctuating information rates | H04J 3/07 |

H04N 21/4347
{Demultiplexing of several video streams}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US 2003/0026423 A1

H04N 21/4348
{Demultiplexing of additional data and video streams}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Extraction of the additional data from a digital video stream.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: WO 03/088645 A1

H04N 21/4349
{by extracting from data carousels, e.g. extraction of software modules from a DVB carousel}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Extraction process of the data out of the DVB carousel.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: WO 2004/082289 A1
H04N 21/435
Processing of additional data, e.g. decrypting of additional data, reconstructing software from modules extracted from the transport stream

Definition statement
This place covers:
Software, additional data and generally speaking to non-streaming data. This part is dedicated to the retrieval of software modules and non audio-video information, such as additional data (descriptors, WWW pages,...) for example by extracting them from a DVB carousel or received from an internet site. Modules are reordered according to a directory module, checked for consistency and eventually the complete package is rebuilt.

H04N 21/4351
{involving reassembling additional data, e.g. rebuilding an executable program from recovered modules}

Definition statement
This place covers:
After recovery, all modules are ordered and the initial package rebuilt.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: WO9962248,W02004082289,W0 2008/143447 A1

H04N 21/4353
{involving decryption of additional data (arrangements using cryptography for the use of broadcast information or broadcast-related information H04H 60/23)}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: WO 2005/013126 A1

References
Limiting references
This place does not cover:
Arrangements using cryptography for the use of broadcast information or broadcast-related information H04H 60/23
H04N 21/4355
{involving reformatting operations of additional data, e.g. HTML pages on a television screen (optimising the visualization of content for information retrieval from the Internet G06F 16/9577; media manipulation, adaptation or conversion at the destination in one way streaming for real-time multimedia communications H04L 29/06496; adaptation of message content in packet-switching networks H04L 51/066)}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Additional informations such as an HTML page are reformatted by the client device.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: WO 2007/142648 A1

References
Limiting references
This place does not cover:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Overview</th>
<th>CPC</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Optimising the visualization of content for information retrieval from</td>
<td>G06F 16/9577</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the Internet</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Media manipulation, adaptation or conversion at the destination in one</td>
<td>H04L 29/06496</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>way streaming for real-time multimedia communications</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adaptation of message content in packet-switching networks</td>
<td>H04L 51/066</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

H04N 21/4356
{by altering the spatial resolution, e.g. to reformat additional data on a handheld device, attached to the STB}

Definition statement
This place covers:
The resolution of the additional informations is modified. It can be used, e.g. to reformat additional data on a handheld device, attached to the STB.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US 2008/0148314 A1

H04N 21/4358
{for generating different versions, e.g. for different peripheral devices}

Definition statement
This place covers:
The client device generates at least one other version of the original additional data, which is available together with the orginal version.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: WO 2004/008739 A1
H04N 21/436
Interfacing a local distribution network, e.g. communicating with another STB or inside the home {; Interfacing an external card to be used in combination with the client device (arrangements specially adapted plural spots in a confined site in broadcast systems H04H 20/63)}

Definition statement
This place covers:
• A series of interfaces allowing to communicate with cards and peripheral devices. It includes for example the DVB common interface, secure local communication, e.g. with a smart card or a video recorder, Firewire (IEEE 1394) connection to other video devices.
• Communication aspects with these devices when the client becomes a home server.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US 2007/0124766 A1

References
Limiting references
This place does not cover:

| Arrangements specially adapted plural spots in a confined site in broadcast systems | H04H 20/63 |

H04N 21/43607
{Interfacing a plurality of external cards, e.g. through a DVB Common Interface [DVB-CI]}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Connection via common interface (DVB-CI), multiple conditional access.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: EP 1 921 857 A2

H04N 21/43615
{Interfacing a Home Network, e.g. for connecting the client to a plurality of peripherals (home Audio Video Interoperability [HAVI] data switching networks H04L 12/2805)}

Definition statement
This place covers:
• Several peripherals connected to a home network.
• Documents describing communication aspects on the home network or describing a home network with no special emphasis on the connected peripheral devices.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: WO 2007/097563 A1
References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

| Home Audio Video Interoperability (HAVI) data switching networks | H04L 12/2805 |

H04N 21/43622

{Interfacing an external recording device}

Definition statement

This place covers:

Communication between the client and an external connected recording device.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: EP 1 950 966 A1

H04N 21/4363

Adapting the video {or multiplex} stream to a specific local network, e.g. a IEEE 1394 or Bluetooth® network

Definition statement

This place covers:

Adaptation of the bitstream to the local network: e.g. transport of video over firewire.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US 2008/0007616 A1

H04N 21/43632

{involving a wired protocol, e.g. IEEE 1394 (high-speed IEEE 1394 serial bus H04L 12/40052)}

Definition statement

This place covers:

Devices and peripherals connected via a firewire (IEEE1394) link.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US 2008/0007616 A1

References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

| High-speed IEEE 1394 serial bus | H04L 12/40052 |
H04N 21/43635
{HDMI}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Devices and peripherals connected via an HDMI connection.

H04N 21/43637
{involving a wireless protocol, e.g. Bluetooth or wireless LAN (IEEE 802.11; arrangements for wireless networking or broadcasting of information in indoor or near-field type systems H04B 10/114; wireless local area data switching networks H04W; flow control in wireless networks H04W 28/10)}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Device and peripherals connected via a wireless link, such as Bluetooth or wireless LAN (IEEE 802.11).

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US 2008/0273118 A1

References

Limiting references
This place does not cover:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>CPC</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Arrangements for wireless networking or broadcasting of information in</td>
<td>H04B 10/114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>indoor or near-field type systems</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wireless local area data switching networks</td>
<td>H04W</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flow control in wireless networks</td>
<td>H04W 28/10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

H04N 21/4367
Establishing a secure communication between the client and a peripheral
device or smart card

Definition statement
This place covers:
Secure communication with the peripheral or with a smart card.

References

Informative references
Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>CPC</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Security arrangements for protecting computers or computer systems</td>
<td>G06F 21/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>against unauthorised activity</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arrangements for secret or secure communication per se</td>
<td>H04L 9/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Security arrangements in wireless networks</td>
<td>H04W 12/00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
H04N 21/437
Interfacing the upstream path of the transmission network, e.g. for transmitting client requests to a VOD server {(formation of RTP packets H04L 29/06176; application layer Quality of Service and content dependent routing of client requests H04L 29/08945; flow control in data networks H04L 47/10)}

Definition statement

This place covers:
Non physical details of phone or cable modems. Communication aspects with the server are to be found elsewhere.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: WO 03/007611 A1

References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Formation of RTP packets</th>
<th>H04L 29/06176</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Application layer Quality of Service and content dependent routing of client requests</td>
<td>H04L 29/08945</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flow control in data networks</td>
<td>H04L 47/10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

H04N 21/438
Interfacing the downstream path of the transmission network originating from a server, e.g. retrieving MPEG packets from an IP network {(transmission of MPEG streams over ATM H04L 12/5601; processing of real-time packets H04L 29/06176; flow control in data networks H04L 47/10)}

Definition statement

This place covers:
The Downstream network interface processes the electromagnetic waves received from the network and outputs multimedia streams. It comprises channel tuning to get the baseband signal, channel decoding, descrambling.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: WO 02/069581 A1, US 2007/0006259

References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Transmission of MPEG streams over ATM</th>
<th>H04L 12/5601</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Processing of real-time packets</td>
<td>H04L 29/06176</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flow control in data networks</td>
<td>H04L 47/10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
H04N 21/4381

{Recovering the multiplex stream from a specific network, e.g. recovering MPEG packets from ATM cells (transmission of MPEG streams over ATM H04L 12/5601)}

Definition statement
This place covers:
The bitstream is adapted to a specific network. The type of network or protocol used is classified elsewhere.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US 2004/0210939 A1

References
Limiting references
This place does not cover:

| Transmission of MPEG streams over ATM | H04L 12/5601 |

H04N 21/4382

{Demodulation or channel decoding, e.g. QPSK demodulation (analog front ends or means for connecting modulators, demodulators or transceivers to a transmission line H04L 27/0002)}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Demodulation and error correction.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: WO 2006/006833 A1

References
Limiting references
This place does not cover:

| Analog front ends or means for connecting modulators, demodulators or transceivers to a transmission line | H04L 27/0002 |

H04N 21/4383

{Accessing a communication channel, e.g. channel tuning (tuning indicators; automatic tuning control H04N 5/50)}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Channel selection.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: WO 2006/130116 A1
**H04N 21/4384**

{involving operations to reduce the access time, e.g. fast-tuning for reducing channel switching latency}

**Definition statement**

This place covers:

Fast channel change or rapid tuning relate to techniques, where the STB tries to display as quick as possible an image in the time interval starting after the user has issued a channel change command and before the decoding buffer could be filled. Those techniques comprise for example, decoding a low resolution stream, or a stream sent a higher rate,...

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: WO 2006/121801 A1

**H04N 21/4385**

Multiplex stream processing, e.g. multiplex stream decrypting

**Definition statement**

This place covers:

Processing of the transport stream as received from the network and before being sent to the demultiplexer.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: EP 2 023 497 A1

**H04N 21/43853**

{involving multiplex stream decryption (arrangements using cryptography for the use of broadcast information or broadcast-related information H04H 60/23)}

**Definition statement**

This place covers:

Only the descrambling/decrypting of the transport stream.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US 2006/0269063 A1

**References**

**Limiting references**

This place does not cover:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Multiplex stream encryption</th>
<th>H04N 21/23895</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Video stream decryption</td>
<td>H04N 21/4405</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arrangements using cryptography for the use of broadcast information or broadcast-related information</td>
<td>H04H 60/23</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
H04N 21/43856
(by partial decryption, e.g. decrypting a multiplex stream that has been partially encrypted)

Definition statement
This place covers:
Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: WO 2007/011766 A1

H04N 21/439
Processing of audio elementary streams

Definition statement
This place covers:
Audio stream management.

H04N 21/4392
(involving audio buffer management)

Definition statement
This place covers:
Buffering of the audio signal.
Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: WO 2007/031918 A2

H04N 21/4394
(involving operations for analysing the audio stream, e.g. detecting features or characteristics in audio streams (arrangements characterised by components specially adapted for monitoring, identification or recognition of audio in broadcast systems H04H 60/58))

Definition statement
This place covers:
The audio stream is parsed to extract or recognize some features or to detect embedded triggers.
Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US 2007/0209055 A1

References

Limiting references
This place does not cover:

| Arrangements characterised by components specially adapted for monitoring, identification or recognition of audio in broadcast systems | H04H 60/58 |
H04N 21/4396
{by muting the audio signal}

Definition statement
This place covers:
The audio stream is muted because, for example, rights have been violated or for censoring purposes.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US 2005/0278732 A2

H04N 21/4398
{involving reformatting operations of audio signals (details of audio signal transcoding G10L 19/173)}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Reformatted audio stream, e.g. by converting from one coding standard to another.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: EP 1 775 959 A2

References
Limiting references
This place does not cover:

Details of audio signal transcoding | G10L 19/173

H04N 21/44
Processing of video elementary streams, e.g. splicing a video clip retrieved from local storage with an incoming video stream, rendering scenes according to MPEG-4 scene graphs

Definition statement
This place covers:
• Video stream management. Receives the video stream from the demultiplexer and performs MPEG decoding, synchronization with other streams.
• Management of the video decoder buffer.

H04N 21/44004
{involving video buffer management, e.g. video decoder buffer or video display buffer}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Buffer level control.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: EP 1 107 601 A2
H04N 21/44008
{involving operations for analysing video streams, e.g. detecting features or characteristics in the video stream (arrangements characterised by components specially adapted for monitoring, identification or recognition of video in broadcast systems H04H 60/59)}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Detection of features (e.g. logo) in a video stream, extraction of characteristics or generation of metadata in the client directly from the video stream.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: GB 2447876 A

References
Limiting references
This place does not cover:

| Arrangements characterised by components specially adapted for monitoring, identification or recognition of video in broadcast systems | H04H 60/59 |

H04N 21/44012
{involving rendering scenes according to scene graphs, e.g. MPEG-4 scene graphs}

Definition statement
This place covers:
- Spatial composition of a scene according to the scene graph in the rendering process. Scene graph updating following client/user control is covered here as well as the animation of objects.
- Specific to the processing of MPEG-4 objects.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: EP 1 715 681 A2

H04N 21/44016
{involving splicing one content stream with another content stream, e.g. for substituting a video clip}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Splicing of at least one video stream with another stream (video or not) at the client level. It can be used for inserting or substituting a piece of video such as a commercial.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: WO 2006/046212 A1
**H04N 21/4402**

involving reformatting operations of video signals for household redistribution, storage or real-time display {{adapting incoming signals to the display format of the display terminal G09G 5/005; media manipulation, adaptation or conversion at the destination in one way streaming for real-time multimedia communications H04L 29/06496; details of conversion of video standards at pixel level H04N 7/01; video transcoding H04N 19/40}}

**Definition statement**

This place covers:

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: WO 2004/008289 A2

**References**

**Limiting references**

This place does not cover:

| Details of conversion of video standards at pixel level | H04N 7/01 |
| Video transcoding | H04N 19/40 |
| Adapting incoming signals to the display format of the display terminal | G09G 5/005 |
| Media manipulation, adaptation or conversion at the destination in one way streaming for real-time multimedia communications | H04L 29/06496 |

**H04N 21/440209**

{for formatting on an optical medium, e.g. DVD}

**Definition statement**

This place covers:

The MPEG stream is preprocessed for formatting and recording on a DVD.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US 2003/0081778 A1

**H04N 21/440218**

{by transcoding between formats or standards, e.g. from MPEG-2 to MPEG-4 (conversion of standards in analogue television systems H04N 7/01)}

**Definition statement**

This place covers:

Transcoding between standards (e.g. MPEG-2 to MPEG-4).

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: EP 1 372 333 A2
H04N 21/440227
{by decomposing into layers, e.g. base layer and one or more enhancement layers}

Definition statement
This place covers:
The client device generates a layered video stream from the original one.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US 2006/0117371 A1

H04N 21/440236
{by media transcoding, e.g. video is transformed into a slideshow of still pictures, audio is converted into text}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Transcoding between modalities (e.g audio to text).

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: WO 03/049447

H04N 21/440245
{the reformatting operation being performed only on part of the stream, e.g. a region of the image or a time segment}

Definition statement
This place covers:
The reformatting operation is performed on part of the stream, the part being spatial region of the image or a time segment.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: WO 2006/067731

H04N 21/440254
{by altering signal-to-noise parameters, e.g. requantization}

Definition statement
This place covers:
New quantization parameters are introduced allowing to change the resolution of each video frame.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US 6,441,754 B1

H04N 21/440263
{by altering the spatial resolution, e.g. for displaying on a connected PDA}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Client-side alteration of the spatial resolution, mainly for displaying on peripheral device.
Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: WO 2008/085874 A2

**H04N 21/440272**

{for performing aspect ratio conversion}

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*
Conversion of signal for displaying with a different aspect ratio or with a different resolution.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: WO 02/13507 A2

**H04N 21/440281**

{by altering the temporal resolution, e.g. by frame skipping (television signal recording using magnetic recording on tape for reproducing at a rate different from the recording rate **H04N 5/783**)}

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*
Alteration of the frame rate.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: EP 1 956 840 A1

**References**

**Limiting references**

*This place does not cover:*

| Television signal recording using magnetic recording on tape for reproducing at a rate different from the recording rate | H04N 5/783 |

**H04N 21/44029**

{for generating different versions}

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*
The client device generates at least one other version of the original content, which is available together with the original version.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: EP 1 901 293 A1

**H04N 21/4405**

involving video stream decryption

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*
Descrambling of the video stream, decryption of the content stream.
References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

Arrangements using cryptography for the use of broadcast information or broadcast-related information

H04H 60/23

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

Arrangements for secret or secure communication

H04L 9/00

H04N 21/4405

{by partially decrypting, e.g. decrypting a video stream that has been partially encrypted}

Definition statement

This place covers:

Not all of the signal is scrambled or different parts are encrypted differently, e.g. to reduce processor load or to enable a reduced quality presentation.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: WO 2009/021953 A1

H04N 21/4408

involving video stream encryption, e.g. re-encrypting a decrypted video stream for redistribution in a home network

Definition statement

This place covers:

The client device reencrypts the decrypted video stream, usually with another key. It can be used for secure recording.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: EP 1 410 342 B1

References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

Arrangements using cryptography for the use of broadcast information or broadcast-related information

H04H 60/23

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

Arrangements for secret or secure communication

H04L 9/00
H04N 21/441

Acquiring end-user identification {, e.g. using personal code sent by the remote control or by inserting a card}

Definition statement

This place covers:

The user identification can be used to retrieve his settings, viewing preferences or in financial transactions. Monitoring of the user actions are to be classified elsewhere.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US 2007/0244665 A1, US 2007/0150832 A1

References

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Restricting access to computer systems by authenticating users using a predetermined code | G06F 21/33 |
| Authentication in wireless communication networks | H04W 12/06 |

H04N 21/4415

using biometric characteristics of the user, e.g. by voice recognition or fingerprint scanning {(authentication mechanisms using biometrical features for network security H04L 29/06809)}

Definition statement

This place covers:

The user is passively identified by facial/fingerprint/voice recognition. A corresponding symbol should be added to describe the type of sensor/input device used.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: WO 2008/157684 A2

References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

| Authentication mechanisms using biometrical features for network security | H04L 29/06809 |

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Restricting access to computer systems by authenticating users using biometric data | G06F 21/32 |
| Methods or arrangements for recognising patterns | G06K 9/00 |
| Authentication in wireless network security | H04W 12/06 |
**H04N 21/442**

Monitoring of processes or resources, e.g. detecting the failure of a recording device, monitoring the downstream bandwidth, the number of times a movie has been viewed, the storage space available from the internal hard disk {(arrangements for monitoring broadcast services or broadcast-related services H04H 60/29; arrangements for identifying or recognising characteristics with a direct linkage to broadcast information H04H 60/35; monitoring of user activities for profile generation for accessing a video database G06F 16/739; monitoring in wireless networks H04W 24/00)}

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

Monitoring is an internal process, which checks permanently user inputs, the bandwidth available at the different network interfaces or any internal processes. It can generate history data, which is later processed for example by a recommender system to build automatically a user profile (implicit profile). Since profiles can be also defined explicitly by the user via a menu, only the passive monitoring of user selections are to be classified here. Creation of explicit profiles is indexed elsewhere.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: WO 2006/052711 A2

**References**

**Limiting references**

*This place does not cover:*

| Monitoring of user activities for profile generation for accessing a video database | G06F 16/78 |
| Arrangements for monitoring broadcast services or broadcast-related services | H04H 60/29 |
| Arrangements for identifying or recognising characteristics with a direct linkage to broadcast information | H04H 60/35 |
| Monitoring in wireless networks | H04W 24/00 |

**H04N 21/44204**

{Monitoring of content usage, e.g. the number of times a movie has been viewed, copied or the amount which has been watched (monitoring of user activities for profile generation for accessing a video database G06F 16/739; protecting generic digital content where the protection is independent of the precise nature of the content G06F 21/10; arrangements for monitoring the use made of the broadcast services in broadcast systems H04H 60/31)}

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

The client keeps track of how often a piece of content has been viewed or copied or recorded. Covers also records of content ID, percentage of viewed/recorded program.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: EP 1 737 236 A2
References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

- Monitoring of user activities for profile generation for accessing a video database [G06F 16/78]
- Protecting generic digital content where the protection is independent of the precise nature of the content [G06F 21/10]
- Arrangements for monitoring the use made of the broadcast services in broadcast systems [H04H 60/31]

H04N 21/44209

{Monitoring of downstream path of the transmission network originating from a server, e.g. bandwidth variations of a wireless network (arrangements for maintenance or administration in data switching networks involving bandwidth and capacity management [H04L 41/0896])}

Definition statement

This place covers:

The connection to the server is monitored, for example availability, bandwidth.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US 2008/0104653 A1

References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

- Measuring or estimating channel quality parameters [H04B 17/309]
- Arrangements for maintenance or administration in data switching networks involving bandwidth and capacity management [H04L 41/0896]

H04N 21/44213

{Monitoring of end-user related data (arrangements for monitoring the users' behaviour or opinions in broadcast systems [H04H 60/33])}

Definition statement

This place covers:

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US 2004/0117815 A2

References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

- Arrangements for monitoring the users' behaviour or opinions in broadcast systems [H04H 60/33]
H04N 21/44218

{Detecting physical presence or behaviour of the user, e.g. using sensors to detect if the user is leaving the room or changes his face expression during a TV program (methods or arrangements for acquiring or recognising human faces, facial parts, facial sketches, facial expressions G06K 9/00221; methods or arrangements for recognising movements or behaviour G06K 9/00335; methods or arrangements for recognising human body or animal bodies or body parts G06K 9/00362; arrangements for identifying users in broadcast systems H04H 60/45)}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Sensors are used to detect for example the presence of individuals in front of the TV set, as well as if somebody is entering or leaving the room. Also user reactions, like movements, face expression should be classified here.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: WO 2007/146089 A2

References
Limiting references
This place does not cover:

| Methods or arrangements for acquiring or recognising human faces, facial parts, facial sketches, facial expressions | G06K 9/00221 |
| Methods or arrangements for recognising movements or behaviour | G06K 9/00335 |
| Methods or arrangements for recognising human body or animal bodies or body parts | G06K 9/00362 |
| Arrangements for identifying users in broadcast systems | H04H 60/45 |

H04N 21/44222

{Monitoring of user selections, e.g. selection of programs, purchase activity (monitoring of user selections in data processing systems G06F 11/34; monitoring of user activities for profile generation for accessing a video database G06F 16/739; tracking the activity of the end-user H04L 29/08675; arrangements for monitoring the user’s behaviour or opinions in broadcast systems H04H 60/33)}

Definition statement
This place covers:
User selections using for example a remote control are monitored. It covers the selection of programs, duration of viewing, purchase activity, setting reminders answers to quiz, questionnaires, advertisements. A log file is generated. Covers clickstream.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: WO 2006/126988 A1
References

Limiting references
This place does not cover:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>CPC Code</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Monitoring of user selections in data processing systems</td>
<td>G06F 11/34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monitoring of user activities for profile generation for accessing a video database</td>
<td>G06F 16/78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arrangements for monitoring the user's behaviour or opinions in broadcast systems</td>
<td>H04H 60/33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tracking the activity of the end-user</td>
<td>H04L 29/08675</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

H04N 21/44227

{Monitoring of local network, e.g. connection or bandwidth variations; Detecting new devices in the local network (configuring of peripheral devices in general G06F 9/4411; monitoring connectivity in data switched networks H04L 43/0811)}

Definition statement
This place covers:
The status of the connection or bandwidth variations on the local network are monitored. Also detection of new devices in the local network

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: WO 2007/093426 A2

References

Limiting references
This place does not cover:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>CPC Code</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Configuring of peripheral devices in general</td>
<td>G06F 9/4411</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monitoring connectivity in data switched networks</td>
<td>H04L 43/0811</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

H04N 21/44231

{Monitoring of peripheral device or external card, e.g. to detect processing problems in a handheld device or the failure of an external recording device (configuring of peripheral devices in general G06F 9/4411; reporting information sensed by appliance or service execution status of appliance services in a home automation network H04L 12/2823; monitoring the status of connected device in data switched networks H04L 43/0817)}

Definition statement
This place covers:
The status of the connected peripheral devices is monitored, e.g. to detect the failure of a VCR or the hard disk problem of an external storage device.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US 7,035,363 B1
References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>CPC Class</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Configuring of peripheral devices in general</td>
<td>G06F 9/4411</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reporting information sensed by appliance or service execution status of appliance services in a home automation network</td>
<td>H04L 12/2823</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monitoring the status of connected device in data switched networks</td>
<td>H04L 43/0817</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

H04N 21/44236

{Monitoring of piracy processes or activities (protecting computer platforms against harmful, malicious or unexpected behaviour or activities using intrusion detection and counter measures G06F 21/566; computer virus detection and handling G06F 21/56)}

References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>CPC Class</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Computer virus detection and handling</td>
<td>G06F 21/56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Protecting computer platforms against harmful, malicious or unexpected behaviour or activities using intrusion detection and counter measures</td>
<td>G06F 21/566</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

H04N 21/4424

{Monitoring of the internal components or processes of the client device, e.g. CPU or memory load, processing speed, timer, counter or percentage of the hard disk space used (error monitoring in general G06F 11/30; arrangements for monitoring conditions of receiving stations in broadcast systems H04H 60/32; diagnosis, testing or measuring for television receivers H04N 17/04)}

Definition statement

This place covers:

- The client monitors if all its components, internal processes are running properly and reports possible troubles.
- CPU and memory load, processing speed, buffer (other than decoder buffer), timer, counter, percentage of the hard disk space used, authentication of internal components.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US2009244290, EP2043373, EP1722 555A1

References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>CPC Class</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Diagnosis, testing or measuring for television receivers</td>
<td>H04N 17/04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Error monitoring in general</td>
<td>G06F 11/30</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### H04N 21/4424

**{Monitoring the upstream path of the transmission network, e.g. its availability, bandwidth}**

**Definition statement**

This place covers:

Monitoring of the upstream connection, e.g. its availability, bandwidth...

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: WO 2005/053303 A2

**References**

*Limiting references*

This place does not cover:

- Measuring or estimating channel quality parameters

### H04N 21/4425

**Monitoring of client processing errors or hardware failure**

**Definition statement**

This place covers:

Monitoring of errors related e.g. to content uploading, demultiplexing or due to hardware failure.

**References**

*Informative references*

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

- Monitoring in electrical digital data processing
- Error detection in general
- Monitoring in general

### H04N 21/443

**OS processes, e.g. booting an STB, implementing a Java virtual machine in an STB or power management in an STB**

**Definition statement**

This place covers:

- Operating system aspects.
- Basic functions provided by the operating system like memory management, event handling or details of dedicated software libraries.
References

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Boot device selection; Loading of operating system | G06F 9/4406 |
| Arrangements for program loading or initiating | G06F 9/445 |
| Program loading or initiating in general using non-volatile memory from which the program can be directly executed | G06F 9/44568 |

H04N 21/4431

{characterized by the use of Application Program Interface [API] libraries}

Definition statement

This place covers:

Details of dedicated software libraries or APIs.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: EP 1 890 492 A2

H04N 21/4432

{Powering on the client, e.g. bootstrap loading using setup parameters being stored locally or received from the server (resetting in general G06F 1/14; program loading or initiating in general G06F 9/445; bootstrapping in general G06F 9/4401; secure boots of computer platforms G06F 21/57)}

Definition statement

This place covers:

Setup parameters can be stored locally or received from the server.

Describes the action of powering on or booting the client device.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: EP 1 942 658 A2

References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

| Resetting in general | G06F 1/14 |
| Bootstrapping in general | G06F 9/4401 |
| Program loading or initiating in general | G06F 9/445 |
| Secure boots of computer platforms | G06F 21/57 |
H04N 21/4433
{Implementing client middleware, e.g. Multimedia Home Platform [MHP]}

**Definition statement**

This place covers:

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: XP/002416424

H04N 21/4435
{Memory management (allocation of memory to service a request G06F 9/5016; addressing or allocating within memory systems or architectures G06F 12/02)}

**Definition statement**

This place covers:

Details of memory access. Pertains only to the RAM and not the hard disk.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: EP 1 739 672 A1

**References**

**Limiting references**

This place does not cover:

| Allocation of memory to service a request | G06F 9/5016 |
| Addressing or allocating within memory systems or architectures | G06F 12/02 |

H04N 21/4436
{Power management, e.g. shutting down unused components of the receiver (power management in computer systems G06F 1/3203; hibernate or awake process in computer systems G06F 9/4418)}

**Definition statement**

This place covers:

Battery power management of the receiver (e.g. DVB-H, stand-by mode, shutting down unused parts of the receiver)

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: EP 1 814 280 A2

**References**

**Limiting references**

This place does not cover:

| Power management in computer systems | G06F 1/3203 |
| Hibernate or awake process in computer systems | G06F 9/4418 |
H04N 21/4437

{Implementing a Virtual Machine [VM] (virtual machines in general G06F 9/45533)}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Presence or details of the implementation of a virtual machine.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US 2007/0283391 A1

References
Limiting references
This place does not cover:
Virtual machines in general G06F 9/45533

H04N 21/4438

{Window management, e.g. event handling following interaction with the user interface}

Definition statement
This place covers:
• A window manager represents a technical evolution with respect to older techniques of displaying non video data on a screen such as PiP or OSD.
• The creation, management of windows or drawing primitives and generally speaking the management of the interaction with a GUI including event handling.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US 2008/0150964 A1

H04N 21/45

Management operations performed by the client for facilitating the reception of or the interaction with the content or administrating data related to the end-user or to the client device itself, e.g. learning user preferences for recommending movies, resolving scheduling conflicts

Definition statement
This place covers:
System management. This layer describes high-level functions of the multimedia client, but which are still transparent for the end-user.

H04N 21/4508

{Management of client or end-user data}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Management functions implemented in the client device.
H04N 21/4516

{involving client characteristics, e.g. Set-Top-Box type, software version, amount of memory available (allocation of resources considering hardware capabilities G06F 9/5044; allocation of resources considering software capabilities G06F 9/5055; protocols involving terminal profiles for network applications in communication control or processing H04L 29/08927; message adaptation based on network or terminal capabilities in packet switching networks H04L 51/06: processing of terminal status or physical abilities in wireless networks H04W 8/22)}

Definition statement

This place covers:

The hardware profile describing the processing capabilities of the client is used to discard data streams, which the client can not handle and to retrieve software modules or streams compatible with its capabilities.

It covers hardware and software resources, like the version of the software installed.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US 2008/0148314 A1

References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Allocation of resources considering hardware capabilities</th>
<th>G06F 9/5044</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Allocation of resources considering software capabilities</td>
<td>G06F 9/5055</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Protocols involving terminal profiles for network applications in communication control or processing</td>
<td>H04L 29/08927</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Message adaptation based on network or terminal capabilities in packet switching networks</td>
<td>H04L 51/06</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Processing of terminal status or physical abilities in wireless networks</td>
<td>H04W 8/22</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

H04N 21/4524

{involving the geographical location of the client (retrieval from the Internet by querying based on geographical locations G06F 16/9537; systems specially adapted for using geographical information in broadcast systems H04H 60/70; protocols in which the network application is adapted for the location of the user terminal in communication control or processing H04L 29/08657; services making use of the location of users or terminals in wireless networks H04W 4/02; locating users or terminals in wireless networks H04W 64/00)}

Definition statement

This place covers:

The geographical position of the client, which can be a regional or ZIP code for a fixed client or data provided by a GPS for a mobile client is used to provide the user with information related to its geographical environment (regional news or ads).
Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US 6,948,183 B1

References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>CPC Code</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Retrieval from the Internet by querying based on geographical locations</td>
<td>G06F 16/9537</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Systems specially adapted for using geographical information in broadcast systems</td>
<td>H04H 60/70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Protocols in which the network application is adapted for the location of the user terminal in communication control or processing</td>
<td>H04L 29/08657</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Services making use of the location of users or terminals in wireless networks</td>
<td>H04W 4/02</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Locating users or terminals in wireless networks</td>
<td>H04W 64/00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

H04N 21/4532

{involving end-user characteristics, e.g. viewer profile, preferences (monitoring of user activities for profile generation for accessing a video database G06F 16/739; protocols involving user profiles for network applications in communication control or processing H04L 29/08936; processing of user preferences or user profiles in wireless networks H04W 8/18)}

Definition statement

This place covers:

The viewer profile is either compiled from history data or defined explicitly by the user or received from the server as demographic data.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: WO 2006/1296988 A1

References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>CPC Code</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Monitoring of user activities for profile generation for accessing a video database</td>
<td>G06F 16/735</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Protocols involving user profiles for network applications in communication control or processing</td>
<td>H04L 29/08936</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Processing of user preferences or user profiles in wireless networks</td>
<td>H04W 8/18</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

H04N 21/454

Content {or additional data} filtering, e.g. blocking advertisements

Definition statement

This place covers:

The server sends the same content to a plurality of clients as it does not have any prior knowledge of their requirements. The filtering module will extract the part relevant to the client according to
Advanced filtering systems use learning algorithms to adapt the criteria according to explicit user inputs and/or monitored data. Details of image filtering are described elsewhere.

References

**Informative references**

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Filtering and selective blocking of messages over packet-switching networks | H04L 51/12 |

**H04N 21/4542**

{Blocking scenes or portions of the received content, e.g. censoring scenes}

**Definition statement**

This place covers:

Usually the filter will extract a small portion of the data from the incoming stream. As this operation is trivial, it does not need to be described. However, some applications consider removing a small part of the information from the incoming stream. Examples can be censoring of scenes, image regions or blocking of advertisements.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: WO 2007/051956 A1

**H04N 21/4545**

Input to filtering algorithms, e.g. filtering a region of the image

**Definition statement**

This place covers:

Once the filtering criterion is defined, the filter needs to know on which kind of streaming or additional data it has to apply.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US 2002/0108128 A1

**References**

**Application-oriented references**

Examples of places where the subject matter of this place is covered when specially adapted, used for a particular purpose, or incorporated in a larger system:

| Filtering for image enhancement or restoration | G06T 5/00 |

**H04N 21/45452**

{applied to an object-based stream, e.g. MPEG-4 streams}

**Definition statement**

This place covers:

The filter could process MPEG-4 streams, for example to delete some objects.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US 2003/0219708 A1
H04N 21/45455
{applied to a region of the image}

Definition statement
This place covers:
A Region Of Interest is defined and displayed, blurred or masked. This can be applied to analog or MPEG-2 streams, where the image has been encoded as a whole and not as a set of objects. Therefore, the region is marked and tracked. Censoring systems can require to mask or blur some regions of the image.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US 2007/0162922 A1

H04N 21/45457
{applied to a time segment}

Definition statement
This place covers:
A time segment of the video is filtered out.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: WO 00/31973

H04N 21/458
Scheduling content for creating a personalised stream, e.g. by combining a locally stored advertisement with an incoming stream; Updating operations, e.g. for OS modules {; time-related management operations (arrangements for replacing or switching information during the broadcast or during the distribution H04H 20/10)}

Definition statement
This place covers:
The scheduler has a similar function to the scheduler on the server side. It processes incoming streams of data as well as data cached on an internal disk and creates virtual channels. It can also be controlled by the server. It can generate a stream of personalized content.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: WO 2007/072368 A1

References
Limiting references
This place does not cover:

| Arrangements for replacing or switching information during the broadcast or during the distribution | H04H 20/10 |
H04N 21/4583

{Automatically resolving scheduling conflicts, e.g. when a recording by reservation has been programmed for two programs in the same time slot}

Definition statement

This place covers:

The client solves automatically conflicts in scheduling issues, like having to perform 2 operations at the same time (e.g. recording 2 different movies in the same time slot)

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: WO 2006/127211 A2

H04N 21/4586

{Content update operation triggered locally, e.g. by comparing the version of software modules in a DVB carousel to the version stored locally (deployment, distribution, installation, update of software G06F 8/65; program updating while running in general G06F 8/656; error detection or correction of the data by redundancy during software upgrading G06F 11/1433; arrangements for updating broadcast information or broadcast-related information H04H 60/25)}

Definition statement

This place covers:

The client checks itself if an update operation needs to be performed. This could be implemented by comparing the version of software modules in a DVB carousel with the local version.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US 005666293A

References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>CPC Classifications</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Deployment, distribution, installation, update of software</td>
<td>G06F 8/65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Program updating while running in general</td>
<td>G06F 8/656</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Error detection or correction of the data by redundancy during software upgrading</td>
<td>G06F 11/1433</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arrangements for updating broadcast information or broadcast-related information</td>
<td>H04H 60/25</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

H04N 21/462

Content or additional data management, e.g. creating a master electronic program guide from data received from the Internet and a Head-end, controlling the complexity of a video stream by scaling the resolution or bitrate based on the client capabilities

Definition statement

This place covers:

Management functions implemented in the client device.
Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US 2008/0205857 A1

H04N 21/4621

{Controlling the complexity of the content stream or additional data, e.g. lowering the resolution or bit-rate of the video stream for a mobile client with a small screen (arrangements for using the results of monitoring on user’s side in broadcast systems H04H 60/65; flow control in packet networks H04L 47/10)}

Definition statement

This place covers:
Scalability control is performed by the client device, for example to forward the data to a low-resolution device on a home network.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: EP 1 717 976 A2, US 2003/0126238 A1

References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Arrangements for using the results of monitoring on user’s side in broadcast systems</th>
<th>H04H 60/65</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Flow control in packet networks</td>
<td>H04L 47/10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

H04N 21/4622

{Retrieving content or additional data from different sources, e.g. from a broadcast channel and the Internet (web site content organization and management for information retrieval from the Internet G06F 16/958; transmission by internet of broadcast information H04H 60/82; stock exchange data over packet-switching network H04L 12/1804; push services including data channel over packet-switching network H04L 12/1859)}

Definition statement

This place covers:

- The client combines data received from different sources, like EPG data from cable operators, satellite services, internet or internally stored.
- Describes also the connection to the same source via different networks (e.g. a part of the content is distributed via TV broadcast and another one via internet).

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US 2007/0245399 A1

References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Web site content organization and management for information retrieval from the Internet</th>
<th>G06F 16/958</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Transmission by internet of broadcast information</td>
<td>H04H 60/82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stock exchange data over packet-switching network</td>
<td>H04L 12/1804</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

335
### H04N 21/4623

**Processing of entitlement messages, e.g. ECM [Entitlement Control Message] or EMM [Entitlement Management Message] {(arrangements for conditional access to broadcast information or to broadcast-related services H04H 60/14)}**

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

Processing of the ECM, EMM messages received from the server. Details of the descrambling are found elsewhere.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: EP 1 176 827 A2

**References**

**Limiting references**

*This place does not cover:*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>CPC Code</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Arrangements for conditional access to broadcast information or to broadcast-related services</td>
<td>H04H 60/14</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### H04N 21/4627

**Rights management {associated to the content (security management or policies for network security H04L 29/06986; security in data switching network management H04L 41/28; access security in wireless networks H04W 12/08)}**

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

Described is here the management of the rights attached to the content. It retrieves the rights associated with the content. The rights of the different users are defined using an application described elsewhere.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: WO 02/33509 A2

**References**

**Limiting references**

*This place does not cover:*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>CPC Code</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Security management or policies for network security</td>
<td>H04L 29/06986</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Security in data switching network management</td>
<td>H04L 41/28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Access security in wireless networks</td>
<td>H04W 12/08</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Informative references**

*Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>CPC Code</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Generation of protective data, e.g. certificates</td>
<td>H04N 21/835</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Protecting software against unauthorised usage in a vending or licensing environment

H04N 21/466

Learning process for intelligent management, e.g. learning user preferences for recommending movies ((services using the results of monitoring in broadcast systems H04H 60/61))

Definition statement

This place covers:

The agent is an intelligent system, which learns and tries to adapt its output to its inputs. It receives input data directly from the viewer (explicit profile) via a corresponding user interface (e.g. movie ratings) as well as from the monitoring module (implicit profile). Its output can be a control signal to the filter or a recommendation list, which will be displayed in a corresponding user interface. Learning can be implemented using one of the method described below, but can also be a combination of several methods.

References

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

- Monitoring of user activities for profile generation for accessing a video database G06F 16/739
- Computer systems using learning methods G06N 3/08
- Services using the results of monitoring in broadcast systems H04H 60/61

H04N 21/4661

{Deriving a combined profile for a plurality of end-users of the same client, e.g. for family members within a home (data switching network applications using user profiles H04L 29/08936)}

Definition statement

This place covers:

At the opposite of a case-based agent, a collaborative system is based on the similarity between user profiles. A user is compared to other users and if it is found as an example that he belongs to a user group, the recommendation list of this group will be used for him. As this system is implemented on the client side, only documents related to user profiles on the same client (stored locally) or profiles from other clients but provided by the server to the concerned client should be classified here.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: WO 03/043337 A1

References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

- Deriving collaborative data from a large group of end-users on the server H04N 21/252
- Data switching network applications using user profiles H04L 29/08936
H04N 21/4662
{characterized by learning algorithms}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Types of learning method used by the agent.
Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: WO 2007/054879 A1

H04N 21/4663
{involving probabilistic networks, e.g. Bayesian networks}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Bayesian (probabilistic) networks are used.
Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: WO 01/58145 A2

H04N 21/4665
{involving classification methods, e.g. Decision trees}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Decision trees or any type or classifiers are used.
Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US 6,460,036 B1

H04N 21/4666
{using neural networks, e.g. processing the feedback provided by the user}

Definition statement
This place covers:
The agent will try to match its output to the feedback provided by the user using a neural network. The learning process requires several iterations to converge.
Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: WO 03/ 079688 A1

H04N 21/4667
{Processing of monitored end-user data, e.g. trend analysis based on the log file of viewer selections}

Definition statement
This place covers:
• User selections are recorded in a history file. Therefore this place should only be used to describe processing operations of the history, like trend analysis, clustering,....
• The generation of the user profile, if disclosed explicitly. The dynamic adaptation of the profile is performed by an intelligent agent.
Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: WO 2007/078847 A2

**H04N 21/4668**

*for recommending content, e.g. movies*

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

Generation of a recommendation or suggestion list.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: WO 2007/063468 A1

**H04N 21/47**

End-user applications {(*services or applications for real-time multimedia communications H04L 29/06387*)}

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

End user applications in the sense of services provided by the multimedia system to the user. There are basically 2 categories of applications: the ones providing local interactivity and the ones requiring an uplink.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: WO 2007/067974 A2

**References**

**Limiting references**

*This place does not cover:*

| Services or applications for real-time multimedia communications | H04L 29/06387 |

**Informative references**

*Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Receiver circuitry for displaying additional information</th>
<th>H04N 5/445</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Interaction techniques for graphical user interfaces</td>
<td>G06F 3/048</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Software engineering for user interfaces</td>
<td>G06F 8/20</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**H04N 21/472**

End-user interface for requesting content, additional data or services; End-user interface for interacting with content, e.g. for content reservation or setting reminders, for requesting event notification, for manipulating displayed content {(end-user interfaces for retrieving video data from a database G06F 16/739; content on demand in one way streaming for real-time multimedia communications H04L 29/06462)}

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

A request application allows the user to request a program or any additional information. Covers all on-request applications. The request may be fulfilled immediately, with a small delay or later in the future. The headgroup covers also requests for downloading music.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: EP 1 947 855 A1

**References**

**Limiting references**

*This place does not cover:*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>End-user interfaces for retrieving video data from a database</th>
<th>G06F 16/7335</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Content on demand in one way streaming for real-time multimedia communications</td>
<td>H04L 29/06462</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**H04N 21/47202**

{for requesting content on demand, e.g. video on demand}

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

True VOD systems allow to request and receive a movie within a short delay. Therefore the movie will be streamed only to the requesting user or it will be available on a multicast channel. It covers also details of the menu to stop, pause, FFWD, RWD or play a movie.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: GB 244974 A1

**H04N 21/47205**

{for manipulating displayed content, e.g. interacting with MPEG-4 objects, editing locally}

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

- The user can interact with MPEG-4 objects.
- Editing by the end-user on the client device.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US 2008/0201369 A1
H04N 21/47208
{for requesting near-video-on-demand content}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Movies are sent on a regular basis with a time offset (staggered) on different broadcast channels.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: WO 2007/024233 A1

H04N 21/47211
{for requesting pay-per-view content (payment schemes payment architectures or payment protocols G06Q 20/00, G07F)}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Broadcast programs not being NVOD associated to a request for purchasing should be classified here. Includes free preview programs.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: WO 97/50251

References
Limiting references
This place does not cover:
Payment schemes payment architectures or payment protocols G06Q 20/00, G07F

H04N 21/47214
{for content reservation or setting reminders; for requesting event notification, e.g. of sport results or stock market (stock exchange data over packet-switching network H04L 12/1804; push services over packet-switching network H04L 12/1859; notification of incoming messages in packet switching networks H04L 51/24)}

Definition statement
This place covers:
• The viewer can mark a program displayed in an EPG for later viewing or recording. Pertains to the reservation of time, channel or a piece of content.
• Bookmarking operations as well as the request for notification when an event has occurred (e.g. sport results or stock exchange above a given level).

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: WO 2005/088969 A1

References
Limiting references
This place does not cover:
Stock exchange data over packet-switching network H04L 12/1804
Push services over packet-switching network H04L 12/1859
H04N 21/47217
{for controlling playback functions for recorded or on-demand content, e.g. using progress bars, mode or play-point indicators or bookmarks (specific graphical features in visual interfaces H04N 21/4312)}

References
Limiting references
This place does not cover:

Specific graphical features in visual interfaces H04N 21/4312

H04N 21/4722
for requesting additional data associated with the content

Definition statement
This place covers:
The user requests actively for additional data, e.g. by pressing a button on a remote control, when an icon signaling the presence of interactive content is displayed on the screen.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: WO 97/50251

H04N 21/4725
using interactive regions of the image, e.g. hot spots {(details of information retrieval from the Internet by using URLs G06F 16/955; processing chained hypermedia data for information retrieval G06F 16/94)}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Additional data is accessed by clicking on a hotspot

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US 2005/0086690 A1

References
Limiting references
This place does not cover:

Processing chained hypermedia data for information retrieval G06F 16/94
Details of information retrieval from the Internet by using URLs G06F 16/955
H04N 21/4728

for selecting a Region Of Interest [ROI], e.g. for requesting a higher resolution version of a selected region

Definition statement
This place covers:
Manual selection of a portion of the displayed frame on the screen by the user.
Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: WO 2007/057875 A2

H04N 21/475

End-user interface for inputting end-user data, e.g. personal identification number [PIN], preference data

Definition statement
This place covers:
Profile applications allow to define parameters, which will control the viewing experience of the viewer.
Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: WO 2008/099303

H04N 21/4751

{for defining user accounts, e.g. accounts for children}

Definition statement
This place covers:
A master user (e.g. parent) defines several accounts for the users of the client (e.g. children).
Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: WO 2007/103154

H04N 21/4753

{for user identification, e.g. by entering a PIN or password (authentication mechanisms using passwords for network security H04L 29/06782)}

Definition statement
This place covers:
The user identifies himself to the client by entering a password or a PIN number. Passive identification is to be found elsewhere.

References

Limiting references
This place does not cover:

| Authentication mechanisms using passwords for network security | H04L 29/06782 |
H04N 21/4755
{for defining user preferences, e.g. favourite actors or genre (retrieval personalisation and generation of user profiles for the retrieval of video data G06F 16/739; data switching network applications using user profiles H04L 29/08936)}

Definition statement
This place covers:
The user enters for example his favorite channels, actors, directors, program genre or just a rating level (as used with a V-chip). Covers menus for parental control in general.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US 2002/0140728 A1

References

Limiting references
This place does not cover:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>CPC</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Retrieval personalisation and generation of user profiles for the retrieval of video data</td>
<td>G06F 16/735</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Data switching network applications using user profiles</td>
<td>H04L 29/08936</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

H04N 21/4756
{for rating content, e.g. scoring a recommended movie}

Definition statement
This place covers:
This application is required for example by the agent module during its learning phase. Items are displayed on the screen and the user is requested to provide a rating.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US 6,816,172 B1

H04N 21/4758
{for providing answers, e.g. voting}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Questions and answers. It can be used to poll users about their opinion regarding a problem raised during the TV broadcast, to react on an advertisement or in a TV quiz. Covers voting.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: EP 1 788 810 A1
H04N 21/478
Supplemental services, e.g. displaying phone caller identification, shopping application

Definition statement
This place covers:
Described are here applications, which are provided as additional services to the users but do not belong to the core services provided in a multimedia system.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US 2008/0235745 A1

H04N 21/47805
{Electronic banking (banking in general G06Q 30/02)}

Definition statement
This place covers:
On-line banking application including the trading of stocks.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US 2002/0087968 A1

References
Limiting references
This place does not cover:

| Banking in general | G06Q 30/02 |

H04N 21/4781
{Games}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Only games, which do not interact with the video stream (e.g. MPEG-4 based game) and are not of a question and answer (e.g. quiz) type. They can be local or played with remote opponents.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: WO 2007/076504 A2

H04N 21/47815
{Electronic shopping (payment schemes, payment architectures or payment protocols for electronic shopping systems G06Q 20/12)}

Definition statement
This place covers:
TV home-shopping applications, also requesting quotes for services, excludes the request for additional data.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US 2008/0282283 A1
References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

Payment schemes, payment architectures or payment protocols for electronic shopping systems

H04N 21/4782

Web browsing {, e.g. WebTV}

Definition statement

This place covers:

The TV terminal is used as a WWW browser (e.g. WebTV) to display WWW pages. It must not be confused with systems where video or program related data is retrieved from the Internet without active browsing by the user. This place should not be used either for PC's with an internet connection.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US 2009/0019495 A1

References

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

Retrieval from the web

Protocols for network applications involving the use of web-based technology

H04N 21/4784

receiving rewards

Definition statement

This place covers:

Users receive awards, coupons, prizes, points, air miles...

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: WO 2008/146270 A1

References

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

Payment schemes, architectures or protocols

E-commerce

Charging arrangements in data networks
H04N 21/4786
e-mailing {(message switching systems, e.g. electronic mail systems H04L 51/00)}

Definition statement
This place covers:
E-mail application as known from computer systems but implemented on a Set-Top-Box or TV receiver.

References
Informative references
Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

| Message switching systems, e.g. electronic mail systems H04L 51/00 |
| Wireless messaging H04W 4/12 |

H04N 21/4788
communicating with other users, e.g. chatting {(arrangements for providing for computer conferences, e.g. chat rooms, to substation in data switching networks H04L 12/1813; protocols for peer-to-peer networking in communication control or processing H04L 29/08306)}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Systems allowing users from distinct clients to communicate with each other, for example to exchange videos or any kind of data but no E-mails. Covers chat applications, bulletin board, forum.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: WO 2007/117251 A1

References
Limiting references
This place does not cover:

| Arrangements for providing for computer conferences, e.g. chat rooms, to substation in data switching networks H04L 12/1813 |
| Protocols for peer-to-peer networking in communication control or processing H04L 29/08306 |

H04N 21/482
End-user interface for program selection {(broadcast systems using EPGs H04H 60/72)}

Definition statement
This place covers:
The selection menu allows the user to select actively a piece of content from a plurality. This typically a function provided by an Electronic Program Guide.
Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US 2006/0095936 A1

References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

| Broadcast systems using EPGs | H04H 60/72 |

H04N 21/4821

{using a grid, e.g. sorted out by channel and broadcast time}

Definition statement

This place covers:

Programs are displayed in a grid, sorted out by channel and broadcast time.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US 2008/0263600 A1

H04N 21/4823

{using a channel name}

Definition statement

This place covers:

Channels are selected by entering their name instead of number.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: EP 1 363204 A2

H04N 21/4825

{using a list of items to be played back in a given order, e.g. playlists}

Definition statement

This place covers:

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: WO 2006/094131 A2

H04N 21/4826

{using recommendation lists, e.g. of programs or channels sorted out according to their score}

Definition statement

This place covers:

A recommendation list of desirable items has been compiled by the agent module and is displayed to the user. It is mostly an ordered list, where are items are sorted out according to their score, which may be also displayed next to the item descriptor. Items can be programs or channels.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: WO 2008/117245 A2
H04N 21/4828
{for searching program descriptors (retrieval of video data G06F 16/739)}

Definition statement
This place covers:
The application provides a search function, for example using keywords to retrieve an actor's name.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US 6,216,264 B1

References
Limiting references
This place does not cover:

| Retrieval of video data | G06F 16/7335 |

H04N 21/485
End-user interface for client configuration

Definition statement
This place covers:
Configuration applications allow the user to define the settings of the client.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US 2007/0199040 A2

H04N 21/4852
{for modifying audio parameters, e.g. switching between mono and stereo}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Sound volume, mono/stereo.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US 2008/0016532 A1

H04N 21/4854
{for modifying image parameters, e.g. image brightness, contrast}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Image brightness, contrast, setting of the color channels.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: WO 03/036949 A1
**H04N 21/4856**

{for language selection, e.g. for the menu or subtitles}

**Definition statement**

This place covers:
Language selection for e.g. configuration or setup menus or subtitles

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: EP 1 962 505 A2

**H04N 21/4858**

{for modifying screen layout parameters, e.g. fonts, size of the windows}

**Definition statement**

This place covers:
Layout parameters such as colors, fonts, size of the windows.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: WO 2006/091740 A2

**H04N 21/488**

Data services, e.g. news ticker {(systems specially adapted for using meteorological information in broadcast systems H04H 60/71)}

**Definition statement**

This place covers:
Presentation of information and data services. Classified should be here only applications pertaining to the display of such data.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US 2002/0176000 A1

**References**

**Limiting references**

This place does not cover:

| Systems specially adapted for using meteorological information in broadcast systems | H04H 60/71 |

**H04N 21/4882**

{for displaying messages, e.g. warnings, reminders (arrangements for providing short real-time information to substation in data switching networks H04L 12/1895)}

**Definition statement**

This place covers:
- Display of warnings or reminders. Pertains usually to textual or graphical information, which is displayed for a brief period of time.
- Download status bar.
References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

Arrangements for providing short real-time information to substation in data switching networks

H04N 21/4882

{for displaying subtitles}

Definition statement

This place covers:

Subtitles or closed-caption.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: WO 2004/098193

H04N 21/4884

{for displaying subtitles}

Definition statement

This place covers:

Subtitles or closed-caption.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: WO 2004/098193

H04N 21/4886

{for displaying a ticker, e.g. scrolling banner for news, stock exchange, weather data}

Definition statement

This place covers:

News, stock exchange, weather data are displayed as a scrolling banner on the screen.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: WO 2008/130061

H04N 21/4888

{for displaying teletext characters}

Definition statement

This place covers:

Teletext service.

H04N 21/60

Network structure or processes for video distribution between server and client or between remote clients; Control signalling between clients, server and network components; Transmission of management data between server and client {, e.g. sending from server to client commands for recording incoming content stream}; Communication details between server and client

Definition statement

This place covers:

• Subject matter comprising processes and structure involving exchange of data and control signals between servers, clients and intermediate components connected within a network(s). These processes and structure generally involve communication between intermediate components,
the network interface of servers and that of the clients, resulting in data or control signals being exchanged there between in a particular manner and/or for a particular purpose and processing operations performed by the network itself.

- The first layer is directed to the physical description of the network such as the nature of the network used for the downlink and uplink connection (e.g. satellite, cable, internet, GSM) and the components used for the transmission of the electromagnetic waves (e.g. taps, splitters, amplifiers).
- The second layer describes communication aspects such as addressing (e.g. multicasting), the type of protocol used (e.g. DSM-CC, ATM). It also includes the exchange of low-level control signals originating from server (e.g. encryption key), client or network as well as processing operations by the network itself (e.g. protocol conversion, dropping of packets).
- The third layer pertains to the exchange of high-level control signals originating from client and transmitted to the server (e.g. viewing history, VOD control parameters), or issued by the server and sent to the client (e.g. trigger recording, channel tuning or sending setup parameters).
- The subgroup is directed to the invention information including data transactions necessitating communication between server, client and network. Documents where the invention information is related to the transmitter or receiver per se are placed in the S or C models, respectively.

Examples of documents placed in H04N 21/60
(1) The subgroup is directed to the invention information including physical level components of the distribution model. The physical level components of the T-model preclude physical components of the server and client models. For example, documents where the invention information includes physical level components (such as taps, splitters, amplifiers, etc) are placed in H04N 21/6106, whereas server physical components (such as modulators, multiplexers, etc) are placed in H04N 21/21, similarly client physical components (such as tuners, demultiplexers, etc) are placed in H04N 21/41.
(2) This subgroup is directed to describing the type of protocol used (e.g. ATM) for transport on a specific type of network. The actual adaptation process is described elsewhere.

References

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Data switching networks</th>
<th>H04L 12/00</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Protocols for communication control and processing in data networks</td>
<td>H04L 29/06</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Network arrangements or protocols for real-time communications</td>
<td>H04L 65/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Protocols for client-server architecture</td>
<td>H04L 67/42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wireless communication networks</td>
<td>H04W</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

H04N 21/61

Network physical structure; Signal processing (H04B takes precedence)

Definition statement

This place covers:

Physical level and network topology.

References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

| Transmission                                                   | H04B       |
H04N 21/6106
{specially adapted to the downstream path of the transmission network}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Type of the downlink connection. The first 3 are trivial and should only be used if they play a significant part in the description of a document.

H04N 21/6112
{involving terrestrial transmission, e.g. DVB-T}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Terrestrial transmission. Preferably DVB-T documents should be classified here.

H04N 21/6125
{involving transmission via Internet (transmission by internet of broadcast information H04H 60/82)}

Definition statement
This place covers:
• Typically video streaming via Internet. It must not be confused with browsers or WWW servers providing additional data.
• Computer networks in general (e.g. ATM).

References
Limiting references
This place does not cover:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IP communication protocol</th>
<th>H04N 21/64322</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Transmission by internet of broadcast information</td>
<td>H04H 60/82</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

H04N 21/6131
{involving transmission via a mobile phone network (wireless downlink channel access H04W 74/006)}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Multimedia data are transported over a mobile phone network. Excluded are here wireless transmission in home networks but covers wireless wide area networks and wireless connection to a public access point.
References

**Limiting references**

This place does not cover:

| Wireless downlink channel access       | H04W 74/006 |

### H04N 21/6137

{involving transmission via a telephone network, e.g. POTS}

**Definition statement**

This place covers:

Video over a phone line. Excludes xDSL-type connections described elsewhere. Using the H.223 multiplexing and H.245 control standards

### H04N 21/615

{Signal processing at physical level (signal processing in analog two-way television systems [H04N 7/173])}

**Definition statement**

This place covers:

Details of signal processing at lowest ISO level.

### H04N 21/6156

{specially adapted to the upstream path of the transmission network}

**Definition statement**

This place covers:

Type of the uplink connection.

### H04N 21/6162

{involving terrestrial transmission, e.g. DVB-T}

**Definition statement**

This place covers:

Terrestrial transmission. Preferrably DVB-T documents should be classified here.
H04N 21/6168

{involving cable transmission, e.g. using a cable modem}

Definition statement

This place covers:

Typically for uplinks using a cable modem.

H04N 21/6175

{involving transmission via Internet (broadcast-related systems characterised by the transmission system being the Internet H04H 60/82)}

References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

- Broadcast-related systems characterised by the transmission system being the Internet

H04H 60/82

H04N 21/6181

{involving transmission via a mobile phone network (arrangements for providing broadcast or conference services to substation in data switching networks in combination with wireless systems H04L 12/189; wireless uplink channel access H04W 74/004)}

Definition statement

This place covers:

Low-cost clients do not provide a return channel. The uplink can still be established if the user owns a mobile phone. Excluded are here wireless transmission in home networks but covers wireless wide area networks and wireless connection to a public access point.

References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

- Arrangements for providing broadcast or conference services to substation in data switching networks in combination with wireless systems
- Wireless uplink channel access

H04L 12/189
H04W 74/004

H04N 21/6187

{involving transmission via a telephone network, e.g. POTS}

Definition statement

This place covers:

Uplink using an analog phone modem for example 2-way TV systems.
H04N 21/6193
[involving transmission via a satellite (arrangements for data linking, networking or transporting, or for controlling an end to end session in a satellite broadcast system H04B 7/18526)]

References
Limiting references
This place does not cover:

| Arrangements for data linking, networking or transporting, or for controlling an end to end session in a satellite broadcast system | H04B 7/18526 |

H04N 21/63
Control signaling {related to video distribution} between client, server and network components; Network processes for video distribution between server and clients {or between remote clients}, e.g. transmitting basic layer and enhancement layers over different transmission paths, setting up a peer-to-peer communication via Internet between remote STB’s; Communication protocols; Addressing (signalling, control or architecture for real-time multimedia communications H04L 29/06183; arrangements for peer-to-peer communications H04L 29/08306)

Definition statement
This place covers:
Low-level control signals exchanged between client and server.

References
Limiting references
This place does not cover:

| Signalling, control or architecture for real-time multimedia communications | H04L 29/06183 |
| Arrangements for peer-to-peer communications | H04L 29/08306 |

H04N 21/631
{Multimode Transmission, e.g. transmitting basic layers and enhancement layers of the content over different transmission paths or transmitting with different error corrections, different keys or with different transmission protocols}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Transmission of structured video content (i.e. video which is provided as layers, different versions, objects etc.) over different transmission paths or with different error corrections, different scrambling keys, using different transmission protocols etc. It describes the presence of different transmission "conditions" for the layers, versions or objects. Application example: A high error protection and a
network with good QoS is used for important video layers, less important layers are sent with no error correction on a more error prone network.

**H04N 21/632**

{using a connection between clients on a wide area network, e.g. setting up a peer-to-peer communication via Internet for retrieving video segments from the hard-disk of other client devices (broadcast-related systems characterised by transmission among terminal devices **H04H 60/80**; protocols for peer-to-peer networking in communication control or processing **H04L 29/08306**)}

**Definition statement**

This place covers:

Content can be accessed on the storage medium of client devices, e.g. parts of a movie can be retrieved from the hard disk of other users, instead of using the cache of a server. Chatting applications are classified elsewhere.

**References**

**Limiting references**

This place does not cover:

| Broadcast-related systems characterised by transmission among terminal devices | **H04H 60/80** |
| Protocols for peer-to-peer networking in communication control or processing | **H04L 29/08306** |

**H04N 21/633**

Control signals issued by server directed to the network components or client {((management of faults, events, alarms in data networks **H04L 41/06**)}

**Definition statement**

This place covers:

Server-side control signals. Described are here low-level control signals issued by the server for controlling the network or the client.

**References**

**Limiting references**

This place does not cover:

| Management of faults, events, alarms in data networks | **H04L 41/06** |
H04N 21/6334

for authorisation, e.g. by transmitting a key {(wireless communications network key management H04W 12/04; wireless communications network access security H04W 12/08)}

References
Limiting references
This place does not cover:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Wireless communications network key management</th>
<th>H04W 12/04</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Wireless communications network access security</td>
<td>H04W 12/08</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Informative references
Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Arrangements for secret or secure communication</th>
<th>H04L 9/00</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

H04N 21/63345

{by transmitting keys (key distribution for secret or secure communication H04L 9/08; arrangements for network security key management H04L 29/06707)}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Download of keys, for example transmission of ECM/EMM in a conditional access system.

References
Limiting references
This place does not cover:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Key distribution for secret or secure communication</th>
<th>H04L 9/08</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Arrangements for network security key management</td>
<td>H04L 29/06707</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

H04N 21/6336

directed to decoder

Definition statement
This place covers:
Control of the video decoder by the server
H04N 21/637
Control signals issued by the client directed to the server or network components

Definition statement
This place covers:
Control signals sent by the client device, e.g. for controlling the network or the server.

H04N 21/6371
directed to network

Definition statement
This place covers:
Control signals sent by the client device, e.g. for controlling the network or the server.

H04N 21/6373
for rate control {, e.g. request to the server to modify its transmission rate (flow control in packet networks H04L 47/10)}

Definition statement
This place covers:
The client sends a control signal to the server (e.g. encoder) or to the network requesting a bitrate modification.

References
Limiting references
This place does not cover:
Flow control in packet networks

H04N 21/6375
for requesting retransmission {, e.g. of data packets lost or corrupted during transmission from server} (ARQ protocols H04L 1/18; Transmission Control Protocol / Internet Protocol [TCP/IP] H04L 29/06095)

Definition statement
This place covers:
The client asks the server or the network to retransmit some data packets that have been lost or corrupted.

References
Limiting references
This place does not cover:
ARQ protocols
H04N 21/6377

directed to server {(control of source by destination in one way streaming for real-time multimedia communications H04L 29/06469)}

Definition statement

This place covers:
Control signals issued by the client to the server.

References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

| Control of source by destination in one way streaming for real-time multimedia communications | H04L 29/06469 |

H04N 21/63775

{for uploading keys, e.g. for a client to communicate its public key to the server (arrangements for network security key management H04L 29/06707)}

Definition statement

This place covers:
Describes clients communicating public key to the server.

References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

| Arrangements for network security key management | H04L 29/06707 |

H04N 21/6379

directed to encoder {, e.g. for requesting a lower encoding rate}

Definition statement

This place covers:
Control of the video encoder, also requests for transcoding.
**H04N 21/64**

Addressing \{(multicast or broadcast in one way streaming for real-time multimedia communications H04L 29/06455; arrangements for addressing and naming in data networks H04L 29/12009)\}

**References**

*Limiting references*

*This place does not cover:*

| Multicast or broadcast in one way streaming for real-time multimedia communications | H04L 29/06455 |
| Arrangements for addressing and naming in data networks | H04L 29/12009 |

**H04N 21/6402**

Address allocation for clients \{(address allocation in data networks H04L 29/12207)\}

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

Describes the process of allocating addresses to the clients

**References**

*Limiting references*

*This place does not cover:*

| Address allocation in data networks | H04L 29/12207 |

**H04N 21/6405**

Multicasting \{(data broadcast and multicast in packet switching networks H04L 12/18)\}

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

Data is sent to a group of clients.

**References**

*Limiting references*

*This place does not cover:*

| Data broadcast and multicast in packet switching networks | H04L 12/18 |
**H04N 21/6408**

**Unicasting**

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

Data is sent to only one client on a dedicated channel.

**H04N 21/643**

**Communication protocols {(streaming protocols for real-time multimedia communications [H04L 29/06517])}**

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

Details of protocols are classified elsewhere.

**References**

**Limiting references**

*This place does not cover:*

| Streaming protocols for real-time multimedia communications | H04L 29/06517 |

**H04N 21/64307**

**{ATM}**

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

Adaptation of MPEG packets for the transport on the ATM network.

**H04N 21/64322**

**{IP}**

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

Similar for the adaptation to an IP network.

**H04N 21/6433**

**Digital Storage Media - Command and Control Protocol [DSM-CC]**

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

DSM-CC has been designed for MPEG systems.
**H04N 21/647**

Control signaling between network components and server or clients; Network processes for video distribution between server and clients, e.g. controlling the quality of the video stream, by dropping packets, protecting content from unauthorised alteration within the network, monitoring of network load, bridging between two different networks, e.g. between IP and wireless {(signalling, control or architecture for real-time multimedia communications H04L 29/06183)}

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

- Network control and processing.
- Low-level control signals issued by the network for controlling the server or the client as well as operations performed by the network on the content.

**References**

**Limiting references**

*This place does not cover:*

| Signalling, control or architecture for real-time multimedia communications | H04L 29/06183 |

**H04N 21/64707**

{for transferring content from a first network to a second network, e.g. between IP and wireless}

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

The input signal is routed during the transport to a different network, for example the video stream is sent by the server on an IP network and received by the client via a wireless network.

**H04N 21/64715**

{Protecting content from unauthorized alteration within the network (verifying the information received for network security in communication control or processing H04L 29/06857; integrity in wireless network security H04W 12/10)}

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

Additional measures to protect the data from forbidden alterations during the transport.

**References**

**Limiting references**

*This place does not cover:*

| Verifying the information received for network security in communication control or processing | H04L 29/06857 |
H04N 21/64723

{Monitoring of network processes or resources, e.g. monitoring of network load (traffic related reporting in data switching networks H04L 43/062)}

References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

Traffic related reporting in data switching networks H04L 43/062

H04N 21/6473

{Monitoring network processes errors (counter-measures to a fault in communication control or processing H04L 29/14)}

Definition statement

This place covers:

Monitoring of error during network processing.

References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

Counter-measures to a fault in communication control or processing H04L 29/14

H04N 21/64738

{Monitoring network characteristics, e.g. bandwidth, congestion level (data switched network analysis H04L 41/14; monitoring functioning in data switched networks H04L 43/0817; flow control in packet networks H04L 47/10)}

Definition statement

This place covers:

Monitoring by the network of the congestion level, bandwidth, BER, status of the connection (dropped).

References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

Data switched network analysis H04L 41/14
Monitoring functioning in data switched networks H04L 41/30
Flow control in packet networks H04L 47/10
**H04N 21/64746**

{Control signals issued by the network directed to the server or the client}

**Definition statement**

_This place covers:_

Network-side control signals.

**H04N 21/64769**

{for rate control (flow control in packet networks H04L 47/10)}

**Definition statement**

_This place covers:_

The network sends a control signal to the server (e.g. encoder or pump) requesting a bitrate adaptation to the bandwidth.

**References**

**Limiting references**

_This place does not cover:_

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Flow control in packet networks</th>
<th>H04L 47/10</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**H04N 21/64776**

{for requesting retransmission, e.g. of data packets lost or corrupted during transmission from server (ARQ protocols H04L 1/18; transmission Control Protocol / Internet Protocol [TCP/IP] H04L 29/06095)}

**Definition statement**

_This place covers:_

The network asks the server to retransmit some data packets that have been lost or corrupted.

**References**

**Limiting references**

_This place does not cover:_

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ARQ protocols</th>
<th>H04L 1/18</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
H04N 21/64784

{Data processing by the network (data processing in packet switching systems H04L 12/56; protocols involving intermediate processing or storage in communication networks H04L 29/08702; flow control in packet networks H04L 47/10; intermediate storage or scheduling H04L 49/90)}

Definition statement

This place covers:

The data stream can be altered by the transport medium.

References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

| Secondary or local servers, which could also alter the data | H04N 21/222 |
| Data processing in packet switching systems | H04L 12/56 |
| Protocols involving intermediate processing or storage in communication networks | H04L 29/08702 |
| Flow control in packet networks | H04L 47/10 |
| Intermediate storage or scheduling | H04L 49/90 |

H04N 21/64792

{Controlling the complexity of the content stream, e.g. by dropping packets (media manipulation, adaptation or conversion at an intermediate station in one way streaming for real-time multimedia communications H04L 29/06503; arrangements for reducing the amount or size of exchanged application data in the network H04L 29/08783; negotiation of resources in wireless networks H04W 28/16)}

Definition statement

This place covers:

The control of the complexity is performed on the network / within the transmission medium (e.g. routers drop packets)

References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

| Media manipulation, adaptation or conversion at an intermediate station in one way streaming for real-time multimedia communications | H04L 29/06503 |
| Arrangements for reducing the amount or size of exchanged application data in the network | H04L 29/08783 |
| Negotiation of resources in wireless networks | H04W 28/16 |
H04N 21/65  
Transmission of management data between client and server

Definition statement
This place covers:
High-level control signals.

H04N 21/654  
Transmission by server directed to the client

Definition statement
This place covers:
Server side Controlling. Described are here all the functions provided in a server for a high level control of the clients.

H04N 21/6543  
for forcing some client operations, e.g. recording (remote booting in general)}

Definition statement
This place covers:
A further category is related to the actions, which the server forces the client to execute. Meant are channel tuning, retrieving from cache and inserting, recording, retrieving OS software from a carousel and upgrading, generating monitoring data, activating a trigger.

References
Limiting references
This place does not cover:

| Remote booting in general                  | G06F 9/4416 |

H04N 21/6547  
comprising parameters, e.g. for client setup

Definition statement
This place covers:
It includes the download of system parameters, such as for the decoder, the display of the graphical user interface, the setup (including OS software) of the client.

H04N 21/658  
Transmission by the client directed to the server

Definition statement
This place covers:
Client side Controlling. Nature of the uplink signal sent to the server.
**H04N 21/6581**

{Reference data, e.g. a movie identifier for ordering a movie or a product identifier in a home shopping application}

**Definition statement**

This place covers:

It can also transmit reference data such as a URL for accessing a WWW page, a movie ID for ordering a movie, a product ID for a home shopping application.

**H04N 21/6582**

{Data stored in the client, e.g. viewing habits, hardware capabilities, credit card number (arrangements where receivers interact with the broadcast H04H 20/38)}

**Definition statement**

This place covers:

The client can transmit stored data, like viewing habits, hardware capabilities, credit card number.

**References**

**Limiting references**

This place does not cover:

| Arrangements where receivers interact with the broadcast | H04H 20/38 |

**H04N 21/6583**

Acknowledgement

**Definition statement**

This place covers:

The client responds to an action triggered by the server, for example confirms that a download was successful.

**H04N 21/6587**

Control parameters, e.g. trick play commands, viewpoint selection

**Definition statement**

This place covers:

The client sends parameters to control for example a VOD server (pause, fast-forward,..). Also includes viewpoint change, when an event is shot with different cameras.
H04N 21/80

Generation or processing of content or additional data by content creator independently of the distribution process; Content per se {([arrangements for generating broadcast information H04H 60/02])}

Definition statement
This place covers:

• Subject matter comprising video data and data related or unrelated thereto, generated by the content provider, wherein the defining feature is the presence of the data per se or processing operations to convert the data into a form suitable for the distribution process or to create an interactive application. This subgroup is directed to raw multimedia objects and processing operations thereof, wherein the operations involved are independent of the distribution process. The resulting data is then provided to the server for distribution purposes. Processing operations dependent of the distribution process are placed in H04N 21/20, H04N 21/60, H04N 21/40, according to the entity (respectively server, network, client) performing the operation.

• The first layer of this subgroup pertains to the nature of the raw multimedia content and covers e.g. video, audio, data, commercials, graphics and software.

• The second layer describes processing functions such as protecting the content by adding e.g. a watermark, certificate, signature, identification or defining content usage, or adding metadata or structuring the content, e.g. by decomposing it into layers, objects and segments.

• The next layer is directed to the assembling of the content, e.g. authoring of an interactive application. Examples of documents placed in the M-model (1) This subgroup is directed to the definition and generation of metadata. (2) This subgroup is directed to protection of rights and covers the identification of the source, content identification, rights specification (e.g. content can be displayed or copied within a certain time period or number of times and by a specific group of users) as well as adding certificates or calculating signatures. Scrambling of the content for transmission purposes are classified elsewhere. Systems that describe the blocking of specific video content transmitted over a network is classified elsewhere. (3) This subgroup is directed towards high-level tools or processes to generate a multimedia application from basic components (such as compiling an interactive application to be run on a target STB). It pertains e.g. to the design of the scene graph, the generation of a trailer, of timestamps, the packaging of the content into an XML file and the linking of multimedia objects to URLs.

References
Limiting references
This place does not cover:

| Compilation of EPG data containing metadata, also adding additional broadcast schedule data | H04N 21/26283 |
| Arrangements for generating broadcast information                                      | H04H 60/02   |

H04N 21/81

Monomedia components thereof

Definition statement
This place covers:

They are the basic monomedia components of multimedia content. Classifying these data types can be very useful to describe the kind of data processed in the system. This data will be distributed electronically later on (from a server to a client using a WAN, from the client to its peripherals using a LAN).
**H04N 21/8106**

{involving special audio data, e.g. different tracks for different languages}

**Definition statement**

This place covers:

Audio. The audio component is usually present and related to the video component. Therefore, this place must be restricted to non trivial aspects such as for example the presence of several tracks for different languages.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: WO2005125205

**H04N 21/8113**

{comprising music, e.g. song in MP3 format}

**Definition statement**

This place covers:

Music, songs, MP3 files. Distinct from the audio track of a movie.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US2005055722,US2004060070

**H04N 21/812**

{involving advertisement data (advertising per se G06Q 30/02)}

**Definition statement**

This place covers:

The commercial will be itself a monomedia or multimedia object but may be considered as an external element, which is added to the original content for commercial purposes.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US2007083887

**References**

**Limiting references**

This place does not cover:

- Advertising per se **G06Q 30/0241**

**H04N 21/8126**

{involving additional data, e.g. news, sports, stocks, weather forecasts}

**Definition statement**

This place covers:

Data should be provided as an extra service in the multimedia distribution system. It includes for example: stocks, sport results, news tickers or weather information.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US2005024236
References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

| Operation of end-user applications for supplemental services | H04N 21/478 |

H04N 21/8133

{specifically related to the content, e.g. biography of the actors in a movie, detailed information about an article seen in a video program}

Definition statement

This place covers:

Additional data that are related to the multimedia content, e.g. biography of the actors in a movie, detailed information about an article seen in a video program, etc...but no program descriptors, in the sense of metadata.

H04N 21/814

{comprising emergency warnings (arrangements specially adapted for emergency or urgency in broadcast systems H04H 20/59; arrangements for providing alarms, notifications, alerts to substation in data switching networks H04L 12/1895)}

Definition statement

This place covers:

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US2008120639

References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

| Arrangements specially adapted for emergency or urgency in broadcast systems | H04H 20/59 |
| Arrangements for providing alarms, notifications, alerts to substation in data switching networks | H04L 12/1895 |

H04N 21/8146

{involving graphical data, e.g. 3D object, 2D graphics}

Definition statement

This place covers:

Graphical objects can be combined with video for example, like in MPEG-4. They can be of 2D or 3D nature. Text can also be considered as long as it is purely graphical and content of the textual information doesn't matter

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: WO2005013144
**H04N 21/8153**
{comprising still images, e.g. texture, background image}

**Definition statement**

This place covers:

Still images like texture, background or any other to be used in a menu should be classified here.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US2007154164

**H04N 21/816**
{involving special video data, e.g 3D video}

**Definition statement**

This place covers:

- Video is the main component in the area of interactive television and will normally be present in all documents. This entry should be thus only used to describe further details.
- Motion vectors.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: WO2008054384

**H04N 21/8166**
{involving executable data, e.g. software (arrangements for executing specific programs G06F 9/44; broadcasting computer programmes in broadcast systems H04H 20/91; movement of software or configuration parameters, in data networks H04L 29/08981)}

**Definition statement**

This place covers:

Executable code can be sent for example to distribute commercial packages or upgrades to clients.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: WO0184824

**References**

**Limiting references**

This place does not cover:

| Arrangements for executing specific programs | G06F 9/44 |
| Broadcasting computer programmes in broadcast systems | H04H 20/91 |
| Movement of software or configuration parameters, in data networks | H04L 29/08981 |

**H04N 21/8173**
{End-user applications, e.g. Web browser, game}

**Definition statement**

This place covers:

Meant are here high-level user applications such as a new browser, game to be run on the client only.
Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: WO2006054865

**H04N 21/818**

{OS software}

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

Software module for the STB operating system.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US2004197073

**H04N 21/8186**

{specially adapted to be executed by a peripheral of the client device, e.g. by a reprogrammable remote control}

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

Software to be transmitted by the client to a peripheral such as PDA software. Covers also IR codes to reprogram a remote control.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US2002086734

**H04N 21/8193**

{dedicated tools, e.g. video decoder software or IPMP tool}

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

STB tools such as decoder software, Realplayer, Mediaplayer, IPMP tool.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: EP1370083

**H04N 21/83**

Generation or processing of protective or descriptive data associated with content; Content structuring

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

Adding information Manipulating or adding information to the content to ensure its appropriate distribution.
**H04N 21/835**

*Generation of protective data, e.g. certificates {(protecting software against unauthorised usage in a vending or licensing environment G06F 21/10)}*

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

Identification of the source (e.g. motion picture studio), content identification, rights specification as well as adding certificates or calculating signatures to guarantee the integrity of the content and the rights of its provider. Protection is added at the generation of the content, before it enters the distribution system.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US2006235800

**References**

*Limiting references*

*This place does not cover:*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Video stream encryption in the server</th>
<th>H04N21/2437</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Video stream encryption in the client</td>
<td>H04N 21/4408</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Protecting software against unauthorised usage in a vending or licensing environment</td>
<td>G06F 21/10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**H04N 21/8352**

*involving content or source identification data, e.g. Unique Material Identifier [UMID]*

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

The content receives an identification number, e.g. UMID, describing for example a video clip number, the source (motion picture studio) it comes from.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US2003005451

**H04N 21/8355**

*involving usage data, e.g. number of copies or viewings allowed*

**Definition statement**

*This place covers:*

- The content provider defines how his content has to be used, for example if it can be displayed or copied and how often and by which group of users. This information is processed for example by the client-side rights manager or on the server-side rights management.
- Covers also rental period of a movie.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US2005155079
H04N 21/83555
{using a structured language for describing usage rules of the content, e.g.
REL}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Structured language for describing usage rules of the content (i.e. REL).

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: WO2006075904

H04N 21/8358

involving watermark {(protecting executable software by watermarking
G06F 21/16; image watermarking in general G06T 1/0021; watermarks inserted
in still images for transmission purposes H04N 1/32144; inserting watermarks
during video coding H04N 19/467)}

Definition statement
This place covers:
A watermark is embedded in the content for later verification purposes.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: WO2007122574

References
Limiting references
This place does not cover:

| Watermarks inserted in still images for transmission purposes | H04N 1/32144 |
| Inserting watermarks during video coding | H04N 19/467 |
| Protecting executable software by watermarking | G06F 21/16 |
| Image watermarking in general | G06T 1/0021 |

H04N 21/84

Generation or processing of descriptive data, e.g. content descriptors
{(systems specially adapted for using meta-information in broadcast systems
H04H 60/73)}

Definition statement
This place covers:
• Program descriptors (abstract, actors,..) as video specific metadata defined in MPEG-7. As
  metadata is a widely used word in a large range of applications, attention should be paid not to
  classify here aspects like identifiers, watermarks or additional data.
• Covers also program categories, reviews by other viewers and scene descriptors for MPEG-4
  objects.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: EP1496701
References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

| Compilation of the EPG data as such by adding broadcast schedule data to metadata | H04N 21/26283 |
| Supplemental data specifically related to the content | H04N 21/8133 |
| Systems specially adapted for using meta-information in broadcast systems | H04H 60/73 |

H04N 21/8402

{involving a version number, e.g. version number of EPG data (arrangements for version control in computers G06F 8/71)}

Definition statement

This place covers:
Version of the content, e.g. version of a software module.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: DE102007002513

References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

| Arrangements for version control in computers | G06F 8/71 |

H04N 21/8405

represented by keywords

Definition statement

This place covers:
Metadata is available as keywords for quicker matching.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: EP1898325, WO2008032353

H04N 21/845

Structuring of content, e.g. decomposing content into time segments

Definition statement

This place covers:
Structuring of the content, for example by decomposing the content into layers, objects.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US2004047208
H04N 21/8451
{using Advanced Video Coding [AVC]}

Definition statement
This place covers:
This place is used to indicate the presence of video structured as in the new coding standard avc (advanced video coding), also referred to in the literature as jvt, H.264, H.26L, MPEG-4 part 10 (misleading name as the video is NOT coded in object form as in MPEG-4 generally the case).

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: EP1821537

H04N 21/8453
{by locking or enabling a set of features, e.g. optional functionalities in an executable program}

Definition statement
This place covers:
A piece of content has a set of features, which can be locked or enabled, e.g. optional functionalities in an executable program. Covers keyframes in video signals.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: WO0045388, US2004073923

H04N 21/8455
{involving pointers to the content, e.g. pointers to the I-frames of the video stream}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Enter points in the video stream.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: GB2441577

H04N 21/8456
{by decomposing the content in the time domain, e.g. in time segments}

Definition statement
This place covers:
A video stream is divided in time slices, like segments, scenes,..

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US2007183756

H04N 21/85
Assembly of content; Generation of multimedia applications

Definition statement
This place covers:
Content assembly, performed typically by an operator on a work station in a production studio.
H04N 21/854

Content authoring

Definition statement
This place covers:
High level tools or processes to generate a multimedia application from basic components. It compiles for example multimedia descriptors (e.g. MHEG) into an interactive application to be run on target STBs.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US2003192049

H04N 21/85403
{by describing the content as an MPEG-21 Digital Item}

Definition statement
This place covers:

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: WO2008038991

H04N 21/85406
{involving a specific file format, e.g. MP4 format}

Definition statement
This place covers:

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US2004111677

H04N 21/8541
involving branching, e.g. to different story endings

Definition statement
This place covers:
An application has several subscenarios, allowing different story developments.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US2006064733

H04N 21/8543

using a description language, e.g. Multimedia and Hypermedia information coding Expert Group [MHEG], eXensible Markup Language [XML] {(information retrieval of semistructured data, the underlying structure being taken into account, e.g. mark-up language structure data G06F 16/80)}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Multimedia application described using a standard description language such as MHEG or XML.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US2009125938,EP1435738
H04N 21/8543 (continued)

References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

| Information retrieval of semistructured data, the underlying structure being taken into account, e.g. mark-up language structure data | G06F 16/80 |

H04N 21/8545

for generating interactive applications

Definition statement

This place covers:

Generation of scripts or executable (including applets) to make an application interactive.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US2003170004

H04N 21/8547

involving timestamps for synchronizing content

Definition statement

This place covers:

Describes the generation of timestamps for synchronizing different pieces of content such as video, audio or different objects.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US6976208

H04N 21/8549

Creating video summaries, e.g. movie trailer \{\text{retrieval in video databases by using presentations in form of a video summary G06F 16/739}\}

Definition statement

This place covers:

Generation of a trailer (selected scenes from the original video) or any edited version from an original (including preview).

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: WO2005001715

References

Limiting references

This place does not cover:

| Retrieval in video databases by using presentations in form of a video summary | G06F 16/739 |
H04N 21/858
Linking data to content, e.g. by linking an URL to a video object, by creating a hotspot

Definition statement
This place covers:
Reference between one of the component and anything else, like between 2 TV programs or a program and additional information on the internet (URL) or to shopping information. Covers also ATVEF triggers in general.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: WO2008100069

H04N 21/8583
{by creating hot-spots}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Objects or regions of the visual content are associated to further resources, e.g. hypervideo. Excludes URLs. Covers details of marking regions of an image.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: US2003149983

H04N 21/8586
{by using a URL (processing chained hypermedia data for information retrieval G06F 16/94; information retrieval from the Internet by using URLs G06F 16/955; URL in broadcast information H04H 20/93; protocols for network applications involving the use of web-based technology H04L 29/0809)}

Definition statement
This place covers:
Multimedia components are linked in the editing process to internet resource, with the WWW server. This place is used to describe the automatic access to a WWW server via an embedded URL.

Example(s) of documents found in this subgroup: EP1850594

References

Limiting references
This place does not cover:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Classification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Processing chained hypermedia data for information retrieval</td>
<td>G06F 16/94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Information retrieval from the Internet by using URLs</td>
<td>G06F 16/955</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>URL in broadcast information</td>
<td>H04H 20/93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Protocols for network applications involving the use of web-based technology</td>
<td>H04L 29/0809</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>